



## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification 7 : <b>C07K 5/062, A61K 38/05, A61P 19/00</b>		<b>A1</b>	(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 00/49037</b>
			(43) International Publication Date: 24 August 2000 (24.08.00)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US00/04274 (22) International Filing Date: 18 February 2000 (18.02.00) (30) Priority Data: 60/120,813 19 February 1999 (19.02.99) US (71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): ELI LILLY AND COMPANY [US/US]; Lilly Corporate Center, Indianapolis, IN 46285 (US). (72) Inventors; and (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): DODGE, Jeffrey, Alan [US/US]; 11134 Indian Lake Boulevard, Indianapolis, IN 46236 (US). LUGAR, Charles, Willis, III [US/US]; 13100 Highland Springs Court, McCordsville, IN 46055 (US). (74) Agents: MCNEIL, Scott, A. et al.; Eli Lilly and Company, Lilly Corporate Center, Indianapolis, IN 46285 (US).		(81) Designated States: AE, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).  Published With international search report. Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.	
(54) Title: GROWTH HORMONE SECRETAGOGUES			
(57) Abstract			
What is disclosed are growth hormone secretagogues, and their uses, of formula (I) wherein R1 is C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> OCH <sub>2</sub> -, C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> - or indol-3-ylmethyl; Y is pyrrolidin-1-yl, 4-C <sub>1</sub> -C <sub>6</sub> alkylpiperidin-1-yl or NR <sub>2</sub> R <sub>2</sub> ; R <sub>2</sub> are each independently a C <sub>1</sub> to C <sub>6</sub> alkyl; R <sub>3</sub> is 2-naphthyl or phenyl para-substituted by W; W is H, F, CF <sub>3</sub> , C <sub>1</sub> -C <sub>6</sub> alkoxy or phenyl; and R <sub>4</sub> is H or CH <sub>3</sub> , or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.		<p style="text-align: right;">(I)</p>	



**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece			TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	ML	Mali	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MN	Mongolia	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MR	Mauritania	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MW	Malawi	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	MX	Mexico	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NE	Niger	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NL	Netherlands	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NO	Norway	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	NZ	New Zealand		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CN	China			PT	Portugal		
CU	Cuba	KZ	Kazakhstan	RO	Romania		
CZ	Czech Republic	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
DE	Germany	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DK	Denmark	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
EE	Estonia	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		

## GROWTH HORMONE SECRETAGOGUES

Background of the Invention

5        Growth hormone is a secretory protein of the pituitary gland of animals having wide ranging developmental effects on the organism. Artificial manipulation of growth hormone levels has been demonstrated to have significant therapeutic utility. Human growth hormone supplementation has been  
10 shown to be an effective treatment for growth hormone deficiencies and their related disease states in humans. Apart from this application, studies have uncovered new and significant properties of growth hormone which lend further importance to the ability to control growth hormone levels.  
15 For example, recent clinical studies indicate that growth hormone supplementation may be useful in combating the maladies of aging in humans. Elevated growth hormone levels in animals have been shown to result in increased lean muscle mass. One application of this latter observation  
20 could result in higher production of leaner meat products or in the production of larger and/or stronger animals.

      While growth hormone is naturally produced by the pituitary gland, the secretion of growth hormone into the bloodstream is controlled by a second protein, Growth  
25 Hormone Releasing Factor (GRF). This hormone is also commonly known in the art as somatocrinin, Growth Hormone Releasing Hormone (GHRH), and Growth Releasing Hormone (GRH).

There are two ways to approach the problem of increasing circulating levels of growth hormone: (1) increase the level of human growth hormone in the organism directly or (2) increase the organism's natural tendency to produce growth hormone. The latter strategy may be achieved via supplementation with GRF. GRF has been demonstrated to increase the circulatory levels of growth hormone *in vivo*. (Rivier, et al., *Nature* (London), 300:276 (1982). The effect of GRF, including structural analogs thereof, on growth hormone production has been widely studied. A primary obstacle to the use of GRF as a direct supplement is its short lifespan *in vivo*. L.A. Frohman, et al., *Journal of Clinical Investigation*, 78:906 (1986). More potent and/or longer lasting GRF molecules are therefore desirable for the development of effective human therapeutic or animal husbandry agents.

The structure of GRF has been modified in numerous ways resulting in longer lasting and/or more potent GRF analogs. It has been demonstrated that the first 29 amino acids from the N-terminus are sufficient to retain full GRF activity. Speiss, et al., *Biochemistry*, 21:6037 (1982). One strategy has been the incorporation of novel D-amino acid residues in various regions of the GRF molecule. V.A. Lance, et al., *Biochemical and Biophysical Research Communications*, 119:265 (1984); D.H. Coy, et al., *Peptides*, 8(suppl. 1):49 (1986). Another strategy has modified the peptide backbone of GRF by the incorporation of peptide bond isosteres in the N-terminal region. D. Tourwe, Janssen. *Chim. Acta*, 3:3 (1985); S.J. Hocart, et al., *Journal of Medicinal Chemistry*, 33:1954-58 (1990). A series of very active analogs of GHRH is described in European Patent Publication 511,003, published October 28, 1992.

In addition to the actions of GHRH there are various ways known to release growth hormone. For example,



chemicals such as arginine, L-3,4-dihydroxyphenylalanine (L-DOPA), glucagon, vasopressin, and insulin-induced hypoglycemia, as well as activities such as sleep and exercise, indirectly cause growth hormone to be released from the pituitary by acting in some fashion on the hypothalamus, perhaps either to decrease somatostatin secretion or to increase the secretion of GHRH.

In cases where increased levels of growth hormone are desired, the problem has generally been solved by providing exogenous growth hormone or by administering GHRH, or a related peptidyl compounds which stimulates growth hormone production or release. In either instance the peptidyl nature of the compound has necessitated that it be administered by injection.

Other compounds have been developed which stimulate the release of endogenous growth hormone, such as analogous peptidyl compounds related to GHRH. These peptides, while considerably smaller than growth hormones are still susceptible to metabolic instability.

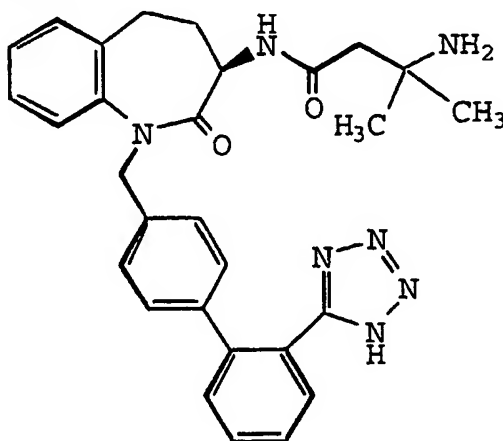
Administration of the hexapeptide growth hormone releasing peptide-6 (GHRP-6) results in the secretion of growth hormone in many species, including humans. This peptide is one of a series of synthetic peptides, the structures of which were based on the pentapeptide Met-enkephalin. It has been shown that GHRP binds specifically to the pituitary, although the binding does not involve the opioid, GHRH, or the somatostatin receptors.

In recent years significant efforts have been taken to develop nonpeptidyl analogs of this series of compounds. Such compounds, termed growth hormone secretagogues, should be orally bioavailable, induce the production or release of growth hormone, and act in concert, or synergistically with GHRH.

Representative growth hormone secretagogues are disclosed in United States Patent 3,239,345; United States Patent 4,036,979; United States Patent 4,411,890; United

States Patent 5,206,235; United States Patent 5,248,841; United States Patent 5,310,737; United States Patent 5,310,017; European Patent Publication 144,230; European Patent Publication 513,974; Patent Cooperation Treaty Patent  
5 Publication WO 94/07486; Patent Cooperation Treaty Patent Publication WO 94/08583; Patent Cooperation Treaty Patent Publication WO 94/13696; United States Serial Number 08/704,494, filed August 20, 1996, United States Serial  
10 Number 08/700,206, filed August 20, 1996, and *Science*, 260:1640-1643 (1993).

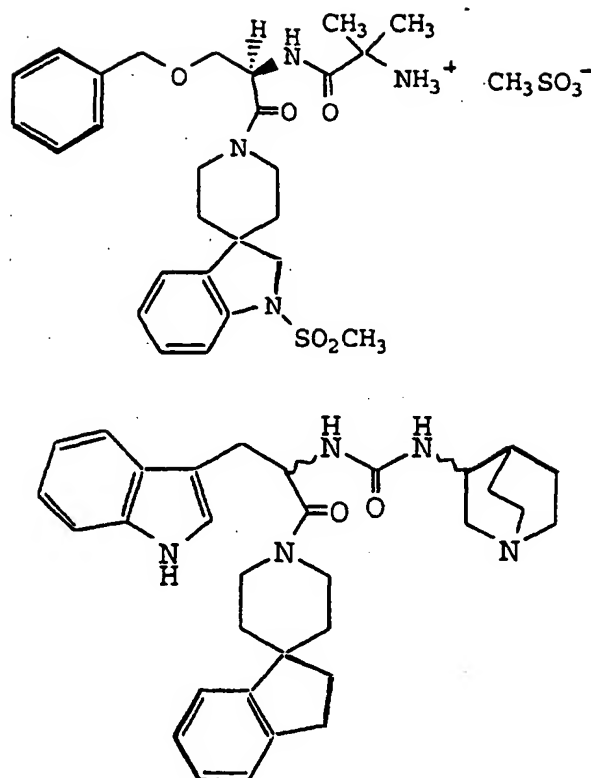
United States Patent 5,206,235, issued April 27, 1993, describes a series of benzolactam compounds typified by the following structure.



15 These compounds have demonstrated clinical activity in humans in raising the growth hormone secretory levels. B.J. Gertz, *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 77:1393-1397 (1993).

Another group of growth hormone secretagogues is  
20 described in Patent Cooperation Treaty Patent Publication WO 94/13696, published June 23, 1994. These compounds are typified by the following two structures.

-5-

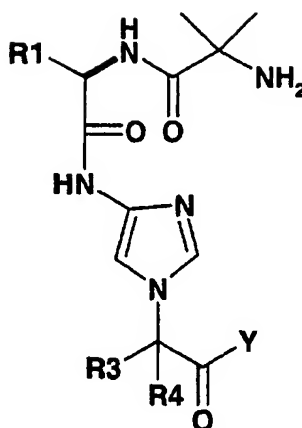


- 5        The present invention provides a series of compounds that have activity as growth hormone secretagogues. These compounds are non-peptidyl in nature and are, therefore, more metabolically stable than growth hormone, growth hormone releasing hormone, or analogs of either of these
- 10    proteins. The compounds employed in the present invention are preferred for human pharmaceutical uses as well as veterinary uses, particularly in cattle, swine, sheep, poultry and fish.

15    **Summary of the Invention**

The present invention relates to compounds of Formula I, as follows:

-6-



wherein R1 is C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OCH<sub>2</sub>-, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>- or indol-3-ylmethyl; Y is pyrrolidin-1-yl, 4-C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkylpiperidin-1-yl or NR<sub>2</sub>R<sub>2</sub>; R2 are each independently a C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>6</sub> alkyl; R3 is 2-naphthyl or phenyl para-substituted by W; W is H, F, CF<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy or phenyl; and R4 is H or CH<sub>3</sub>,

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

The present invention further relates to pharmaceutical formulations containing compounds of Formula I, alone or in combination with other growth hormone secretagogue compounds, and/or in combination with suitable bone-antiresorptive agents, and the use of said compounds and/or formulations at least for the increase in endogenous levels of growth hormone in a mammal.

The present invention yet further relates to methods for the treatment or prevention of a physiological condition which may be modulated by an increase in endogenous growth hormone, which method comprises administering to an animal in need of said treatment an effective amount of a compound of Formula I.

The present invention still further relates to processes for the preparation of compounds of Formula I.

### Detailed Description

In a preferred embodiment, compounds of the present invention are those compounds of Formula I wherein R3 is a methyl group.

5 In another preferred embodiment, compounds of the present invention are those compounds of Formula I wherein Y is 4-methylpiperidin-1-yl.

It is also preferred that the stereochemistry, at the two chiral centers, of the compounds of Formula I is (R,R).

10 The terms and abbreviations used in the instant examples have their normal meanings unless otherwise designated. For example "°C" refers to degrees Celsius; "N" refers to normal or normality; "mmol" refers to millimole or millimoles; "g" refers to gram or grams; "ml" means  
15 milliliter or milliliters; "M" refers to molar or molarity; "MS" refers to mass spectrometry; "FDMS" refers to field desorption mass spectrometry; "UV" refers to ultraviolet spectroscopy; "IR" refers to infrared spectroscopy; and  
"NMR" refers to nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy.

20 As used herein, the term "C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl" refers to straight or branched, monovalent, saturated aliphatic chains of 1 to 6 carbon atoms and includes, but is not limited to, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, t-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, and hexyl. The term "C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl"  
25 includes within its definition the term "C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl".

"C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy" represents a straight or branched alkyl chain having from one to six carbon atoms attached to an oxygen atom. Typical C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy groups include methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, t-butoxy, pentoxy and  
30 the like. The term "C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy" includes within its definition the term "C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy".

The term "carboxy-protecting group" as used herein refers to substituents of the carboxy group commonly employed to block or protect the carboxy functionality while  
35 reacting other functional groups on the compound. Examples

of such protecting groups include methyl, ethyl, *p*-nitrobenzyl, *p*-methylbenzyl, *p*-methoxybenzyl, 3,4-dimethoxybenzyl, 2,4-dimethoxybenzyl, 2,4,6-trimethoxybenzyl, 2,4,6-trimethylbenzyl, pentamethylbenzyl, 3,4-methylene-dioxybenzyl, benzhydryl, 4,4'-dimethoxy-benzhydryl, 2,2',4,4'-tetramethoxybenzhydryl, *t*-butyl, *t*-amyl, trityl, 4-methoxytrityl, 4,4'-dimethoxytrityl, 4, 4', 4"-trimethoxytrityl, 2-phenylprop-2-yl, trimethylsilyl, *t*-butyldimethylsilyl, phenacyl, 2,2,2-trichloroethyl, 2-(di(*n*-butyl)methylsilyl)-ethyl, *p*-toluenesulfonylethyl, 4-nitrobenzylsulfonylethyl, allyl, cinnamyl, 1-(trimethylsilylmethyl)prop-1-en-3-yl, and the like.

A preferred carboxy-protecting group for the practice of the present invention is methyl or ethyl. Further examples of these groups may be found in E. Haslam, *supra*, at Chapter 5, and T.W. Greene, *et al.*, *supra*, at Chapter 5.

The term "amino-protecting group" as used herein refers to substituents of the amino group commonly employed to block or protect the amino functionality while reacting other functional groups on the compound. Examples of such amino-protecting groups include formyl, trityl, phthalimido, trichloroacetyl, chloroacetyl, bromoacetyl, iodoacetyl, and urethane-type blocking groups such as benzyloxycarbonyl, 4-phenylbenzyloxycarbonyl, 2-methylbenzyloxycarbonyl, 4-methoxybenzyloxycarbonyl, 4-fluorobenzyloxycarbonyl, 4-chlorobenzyloxycarbonyl, 3-chlorobenzyloxycarbonyl, 2-chlorobenzyloxycarbonyl, 2,4-dichlorobenzyloxycarbonyl, 4-bromobenzyloxycarbonyl, 3-bromobenzyloxycarbonyl, 4-nitrobenzyloxycarbonyl, 4-cyanobenzyloxycarbonyl, *n*-butoxycarbonyl, (NBoc) *t*-butoxycarbonyl, 1,1-diphenyleth-1-yloxycarbonyl, 1,1-diphenylprop-1-yloxycarbonyl, 2-phenylprop-2-yloxycarbonyl, 2-(*p*-toluyl)-prop-2-yloxycarbonyl, cyclopentanyloxycarbonyl, 1-methylcyclopentanyloxycarbonyl, cyclohexanyloxycarbonyl, 1-methylcyclohexanyloxycarbonyl.

oxycarbonyl, 2-methylcyclo-hexanyloxycarbonyl, 2-(4-toluy1-sulfonyl)-ethoxycarbonyl, 2-(methylsulfonyl)ethoxycarbonyl, 2-(triphenyl-phosphino)-ethoxycarbonyl, fluorenyl-methoxycarbonyl (Fmoc), 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxycarbonyl, 5 allyloxycarbonyl, 1-(trimethylsilylmethyl)prop-1-enyloxy-carbonyl, 5-benzisoxalylmethoxycarbonyl, 4-acetoxybenzyloxy-carbonyl, 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl, 2-ethynyl-2-propoxycarbonyl, cyclopropylmethoxycarbonyl, 4-(decyloxy)-benzyloxycarbonyl, isobornyloxycarbonyl, 1-piperidyloxy-carbonyl, and the like; benzoylmethylsulfonyl group, 10 2-nitrophenylsulfenyl, diphenylphosphine oxide and like amino-protecting groups.

The amino-protecting group employed is usually not critical so long as the derivatized amino group is stable to 15 the condition of subsequent reactions on other positions of the intermediate molecule, and may be selectively removed at the appropriate point without disrupting the remainder of the molecule including any other amino-protecting groups. A preferred amino-protecting group for the practice of the present invention is t-butoxycarbonyl (NBoc). Further 20 examples of groups referred to by the above terms are described by E. Haslam, *Protective Groups in Organic Chemistry*, (J.G.W. McOmie, ed., 1973), at Chapter 2; and T.W. Greene and P.G.M. Wuts, *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis* (1991), at Chapter 7. 25

The term "leaving group" (Q) refers to a group of atoms that is displaced from a carbon atom by the attack of a nucleophile in a nucleophilic substitution reaction. Suitable leaving groups include bromo, chloro, and iodo, 30 benzenesulfonyloxy, methanesulfonyloxy, and toluene-sulfonyloxy. The term "leaving group" (Q) includes activating groups.

The term "activating group" as used herein refers a leaving group which, when taken with the carbonyl ( $-C=O$ )

group to which it is attached, is more likely to take part in an acylation reaction than would be the case if the group were not present, as in the free acid. Such activating groups are well-known to those skilled in the art and may  
5 be, for example, succinimidoxy, phthalimidoxy, benzo-triazolyloxy, azido, or -O-CO-(C<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> alkyl).

The compounds used in the method of the present invention have two chiral centers. As a consequence of these chiral centers, the compounds of the present invention  
10 occur as diastereomers and mixtures of diastereomers. All asymmetric forms, individual isomers and combinations thereof, are within the scope of the present invention.

The terms "R" and "S" are used herein as commonly used in organic chemistry to denote specific configuration of a  
15 chiral center. The term "R" (rectus) refers to that configuration of a chiral center with a clockwise relationship of group priorities (highest to second lowest) when viewed along the bond toward the lowest priority group. The term "S" (sinister) refers to that configuration of a  
20 chiral center with a counterclockwise relationship of group priorities (highest to second lowest) when viewed along the bond toward the lowest priority group. The priority of groups is based upon their atomic number (in order of decreasing atomic number). A partial list of priorities and  
25 a discussion of stereochemistry is contained in *Nomenclature of Organic Compounds: Principles and Practice*, (J.H. Fletcher, et al., eds., 1974) at pages 103-120.

In addition to the (R)-(S) system, the older D-L system is also used in this document to denote absolute  
30 configuration, especially with reference to amino acids. In this system, a Fischer projection formula is oriented so that the number 1 carbon of the main chain is at the top. The prefix "D" is used to represent the absolute configuration of the isomer in which the functional



-11-

(determining) group is on the right side of the carbon atom at the chiral center and "L", that of the isomer in which it is on the left.

In order to preferentially prepare one optical isomer over its enantiomer, a number of routes are available. As an example, a mixture of enantiomers may be prepared, and then the two enantiomers may be separated. A commonly employed method for the resolution of the racemic mixture (or mixture of enantiomers) into the individual enantiomers is to first convert the enantiomers to diastereomers by way of forming a salt with an optically active acid or base. These diastereomers may then be separated using differential solubility, fractional crystallization, chromatography, or the like. Further details regarding resolution of enantiomeric mixtures may be found in J. Jacques, et al., *Enantiomers, Racemates, and Resolutions*, (1991).

During any of the following synthetic sequences it may be necessary or desirable to protect sensitive or reactive groups on any of the molecules concerned. This may be achieved by employing conventional protecting groups as described, *supra*.

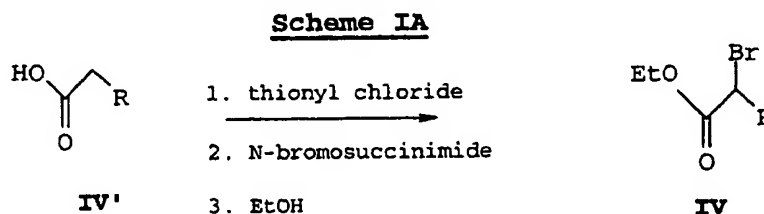
The compounds of the present invention may be prepared by a number of routes, many of which are known to those of skill in the art. The particular order of steps to be employed in the synthesis of compounds of formula I is dependent upon the compound to be synthesized, the starting material employed, and the relative lability of the various substituted moieties. Examples of such synthetic routes may be found in Schemes I through IV provided below, as well as in the Examples.

One synthetic route to compounds of the present invention is provided in Scheme IA-IC below. The compounds of formula IV' and IV are commercially available, or may be prepared using techniques known in the art. A compound of

-12-

Formula IV may be prepared from a compound of Formula IV' through an intermediate acid chloride prepared by standard methods using thionyl chloride or oxalyl chloride.

Treatment of the resulting acid chloride with a bromine source, such as N-bromosuccinimide, followed by quenching of the acid chloride with ethanol, results in compounds of Formula IV. It is to be understood that the bromine group on the compound of Formula IV may in fact be any suitable leaving group (Q), as defined herein. This preparation is provided below in Scheme IA.



wherein R is representative of E as defined in a compound of Formula I above.

As shown in Scheme IB, the starting material further includes compounds of Formula V, which are commercially available, or may be routinely synthesized using techniques readily known in the art. Compounds of Formula IV may be coupled with a compound of formula V (4-nitroimidazole) by methods known in the art to generate a compound of Formula IIb'. Suitable agents to be employed in the coupling of these compounds include the treatment of a compound of Formula IV with an organic or inorganic base, followed by reaction with the bromo compound of Formula IV. Standard organic bases include trialkylamines, potassium hexamethyldisilazide, lithium hexamethyldisilazide, lithium diisopropylamide, potassium carbonate, and the like. Preferred for the practice of the present invention is sodium hydride or potassium carbonate in dimethylformamide.

A compound of Formula IIb' is then deprotected to provide a compound of Formula IIb, using lithium hydroxide,

although other deprotecting reagents may be employed in this reaction. Such deprotecting agents include standard saponification reagents such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, and lithium hydroxide.

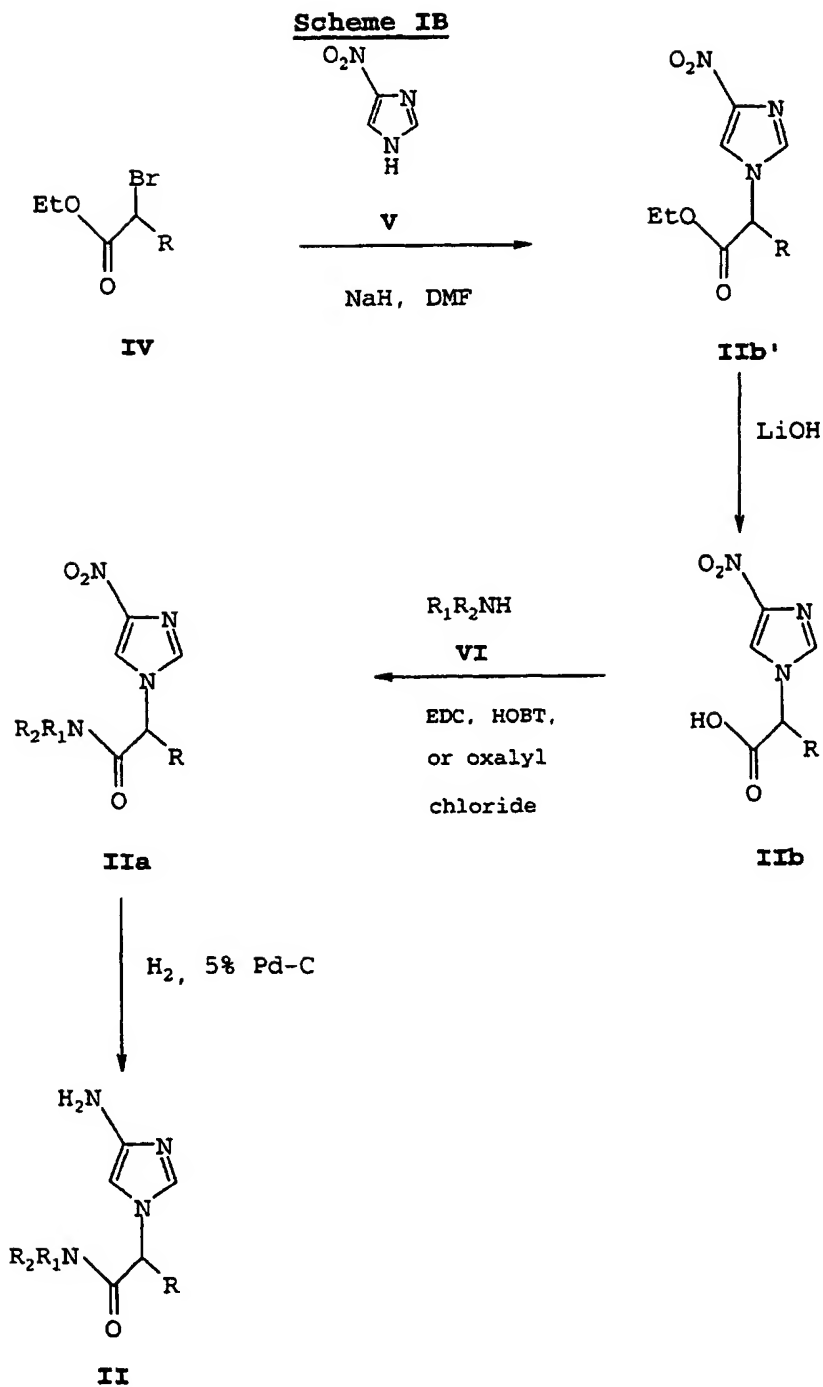
- 5        Substantially pure (R) enantiomers of compounds of Formula IIb may also be synthesized by methods provided in U.S. 5,344,937 and 5,380,866, the disclosures of which are herein incorporated by reference.

- 10        A compound of Formula IIb is then converted to the corresponding amide under appropriate conditions with a compound of formula VI to generate a compound of Formula IIa. In general, amidation of primary or secondary amines of Formula VI may be accomplished by a number of methods known in the art in which activation of the acid to form a better  
15        leaving group. Suitable activating agents for this are also known in the art and include dicyclohexycarbodiimide (DCC), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (EDC) with hydroxybenzotriazole (HOBT), oxalyl chloride, thionyl chloride, PyBOP<sup>®</sup> (benzotriazol-1-yl-  
20        oxytripyrrolidine-phosphonium hexafluorophosphate), and the like. Preferred for the practice of the present invention is hydroxybenzotriazole (HOBT). The nitro group on the resulting compound of Formula IIa may then be reduced to an amino group using any suitable means, employing a suitable  
25        reducing agent. Preferred for the practice of the present invention is a catalytic reduction employing hydrogen and 5% palladium on carbon. A compound of Formula II is produced by this reduction reaction.

- 30        The preferred reaction temperature range employed in these reactions is between -40 and 150 °C, and the most preferred range is between 10 and 40 °C. These reactions may be conveniently carried out in situ, without isolation of the particular compound after its preparation.

- 35        Examples of these reactions are provided below in Scheme IB wherein R is representative of E as previously defined, and R<sub>2</sub>R<sub>1</sub>N is R<sub>6</sub> as previously defined.

-14-



5 A second portion of the overall synthesis of compounds of Formula I is provided in Scheme IC below.

Representative starting material for this synthesis is a compound of Formula IIb', which is a chemically-protected form of the amino acid O-serine. By chemically-protected it is meant that both the amino- and carboxy- functional groups have been suitably protected in order to facilitate further reactions with this molecule. Such protection reactions are known to those of skill in the art, and may be applied to other suitable starting materials. Intermediates of formula IIb' are commercially available, or may be prepared by standard syntheses of amino acids. Such syntheses are well known to persons of ordinary skill in the art and are described, for example, in *Chemistry and Biochemistry of Amino Acids*, (G.C. Chapman ed., 1985). The protected amino group may be specifically deprotected using trifluoroacetic acid and methylene chloride to allow for further reactions with this amino functional group. This deprotection reaction results in a compound of Formula IIb.

A compound of Formula IIb may then be N-acylated with an amino-protected compound of formula X to produce a compound of Formula IIIa'. Suitable activating agents for this N-acylation reaction are known in the art and include DCC, HOBT, EDC, and oxalyl chloride. Preferred for the practice of the present invention is HOBT. Compounds of formula X are commercially available, or are readily prepared from suitable available starting materials. The protected carboxy group on the compound of Formula IIIa' is then selectively deprotected, typically using lithium hydroxide, to generate a compound of Formula III. Compounds of Formula III in which the starting material IIb' is 2-Nboc-amino-pentanoic acid methyl ester may also be prepared by the route described in Scheme IC.

A compound of Formula III is then coupled with a compound prepared from the reduction of IIb' with hydrogen and a palladium catalyst employing a coupling reaction to generate a compound of Formula Ia. Again, typical reagents for this N-acylation are known in the art, and include DCC

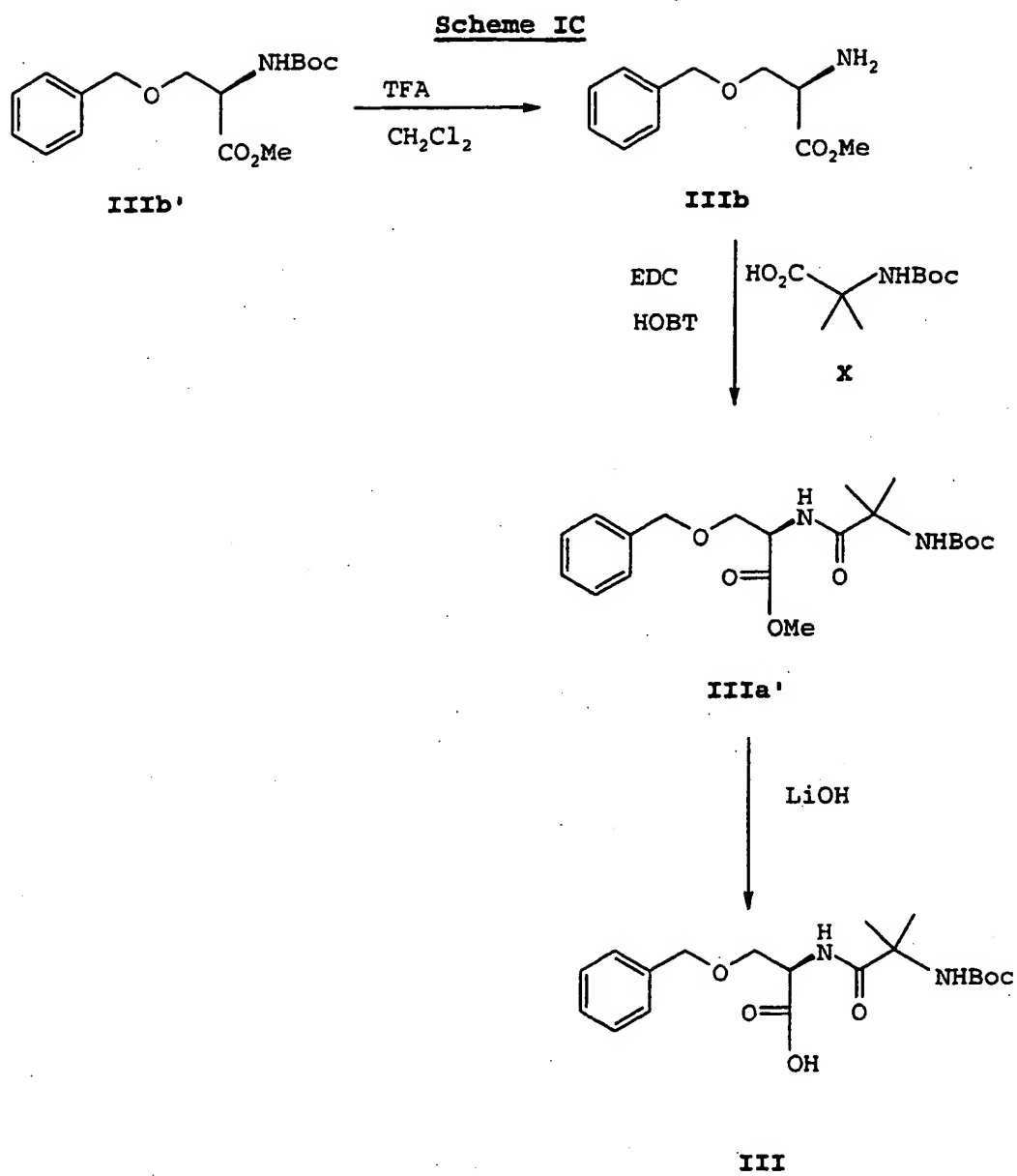
and HOBt, which is the preferred method of coupling employed in the practice of the present invention. A compound of Formula Ia is then selectively deprotected at the carboxy group, coupled at this site with a compound of Formula VI, and then further deprotected at the amino group to generate a compound of Formula Ia. Suitable agents for these deprotection and coupling reactions are discussed, *infra*, and are known in the art. Compounds of Formula Ia are encompassed by Formula I, and are pharmaceutically active.

10       The preferred reaction temperature range employed in these reactions is between -40 and 150 °C, and the most preferred range is between 10 and 40 °C. These reactions may be conveniently carried out *in situ*, without isolation of the particular compound after its preparation.

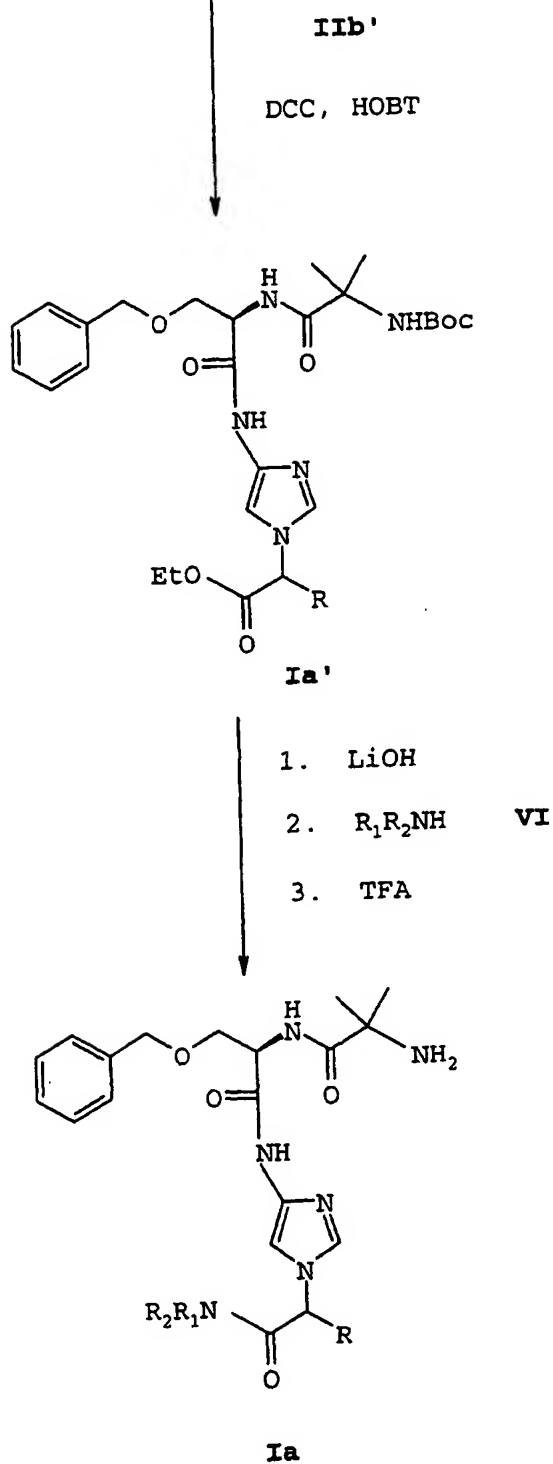
15       Alternatively, compounds of Formula IIa can be coupled with compounds of Formula III to provide intermediates which can be deprotected to give compounds of Formula Ia.

20       Representative reactions are provided below in Scheme IC, wherein R is E as previously defined, and R<sub>2</sub>R<sub>1</sub>N is R<sub>6</sub> as previously defined.

-17-



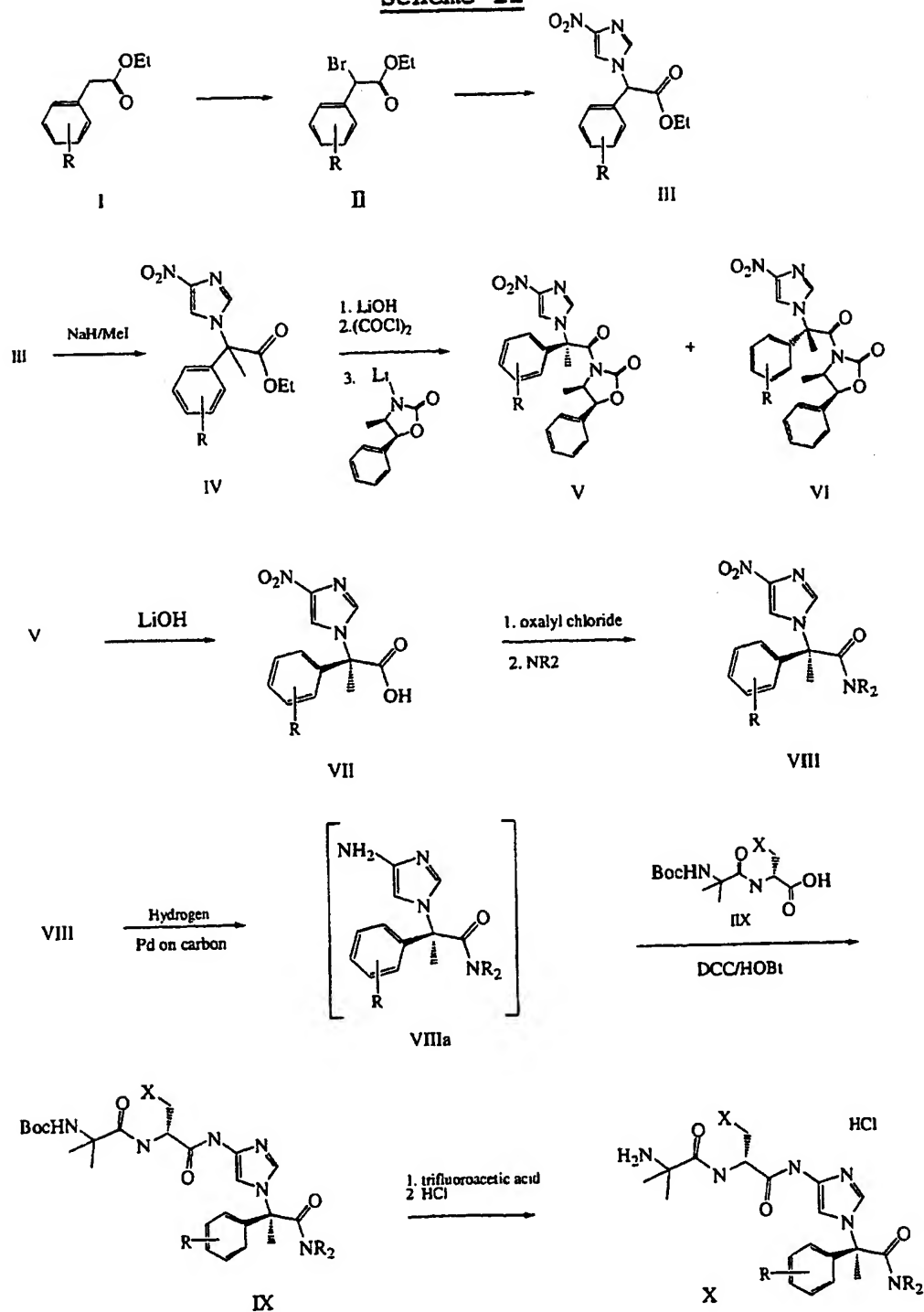
-18-

Scheme IC, continued



In addition to the synthetic scheme described hereinabove, an enantiospecific protocol for the preparation of the compounds of Formula I may be employed. Typically, a synthetic reaction design which maintains the chiral center present in the starting material in a desired orientation is chosen. The preferred reaction schemes are those that generally produce compounds in which greater than 95 percent of the product is the desired enantiomer. In Scheme II below, R-substituted phenyl is representative of the E substituents as provided in compounds of Formula I above.

-20-

**Scheme II**

Within Scheme II, a compound of Formula IV may be prepared by the alkylation of a compound of formula III by

standard methods using a base, such as sodium hydride, followed by treatment with an electrophile, such as methyl iodide. Preferred bases for this reaction include sodium-, lithium-, or potassium hexamethyldisilazide, lithium diisopropylamide, and sodium hydride. Preferred methylating agents include methyl halides or any methyl group with a suitable substituted leaving group such as tosylate, mesylate, and the like.

A compound of Formula V may be prepared by hydrolysis of a compound of Formula IV using standard saponification conditions known in the art. Suitable reagents for this transformation include sodium hydroxide or lithium hydroxide. The resulting carboxylic acid may be converted into the acid chloride by standard methods using thionyl chloride or, preferably, oxalyl chloride. The acid chloride may then be reacted with the lithium salt of a chiral auxiliary, such as (4R, 5S)-(+)-4-methyl-5-phenyl-2-oxazolidinone, to provide compounds of formula V and VI, which are readily separable by silica gel chromatography.

A compound of Formula VII may be prepared by the removal of the chiral auxiliary under basic conditions, such as lithium hydroxide. Other reagents known in the art for removing oxazolidinone-type chiral auxiliaries may be used for this transformation. These include lithium hydroxide/hydroperoxide conditions, reduction/oxidation protocols, alkyl sulfur displacements, and transaminations.

A compound of Formula VIII may be prepared from a compound of Formula VII by standard methods known in the art. Formation of the acid chloride using oxalyl or thionyl chloride followed by reaction with a suitable substituted amine ( $\text{NR}_2$ ) provide compounds of Formula VIII.

A compound of Formula IX may be prepared by the reduction of a compound of Formula VIII using hydrogen with palladium on carbon. Other methods known in the art which

may be employed for the reduction of the nitro group include the use of tin(II)chloride, iron in an acidic solution, ferrous sulfate and aqueous alkali, activated alumina, and sodium sulfite. The resulting 4-amino imidazole compound of

5 Formula VIIa is then reacted directly with the appropriate dipeptide acid (a compound of Formula IIX) under standard peptide coupling conditions involving formation of the active ester of the dipeptide followed by reaction with

10 amine VIIa. Conditions suitable for amide formation include DCC, EDC, with HOBT. A compound of Formula IIX may be prepared from the methyl ester of unnatural D-amino acids such as D-benzyloxyserine, D-tryptophan, and D-2-amino-5-phenyl-pentanoic acid and the like which are known in the

15 art. Standard coupling protocols involving formation of the active ester of the amino acid using DCC/HOBT followed by reaction with N-Boc-aminoisobutyric acid provide dipeptide acids of Formula IIX.

The Boc protecting group of a compound of Formula IX may be removed under standard acidic conditions such as

20 hydrochloric acid in acetic acid or ethyl acetate, trifluoroacetic acid, tetramethyliodosilane, aluminum chloride, sulfuric acid in dioxane, and methanesulfonic acid.

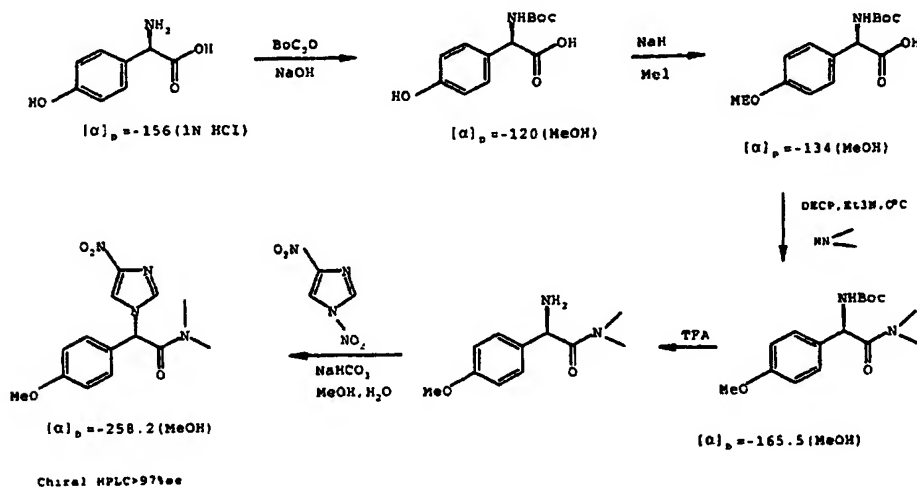
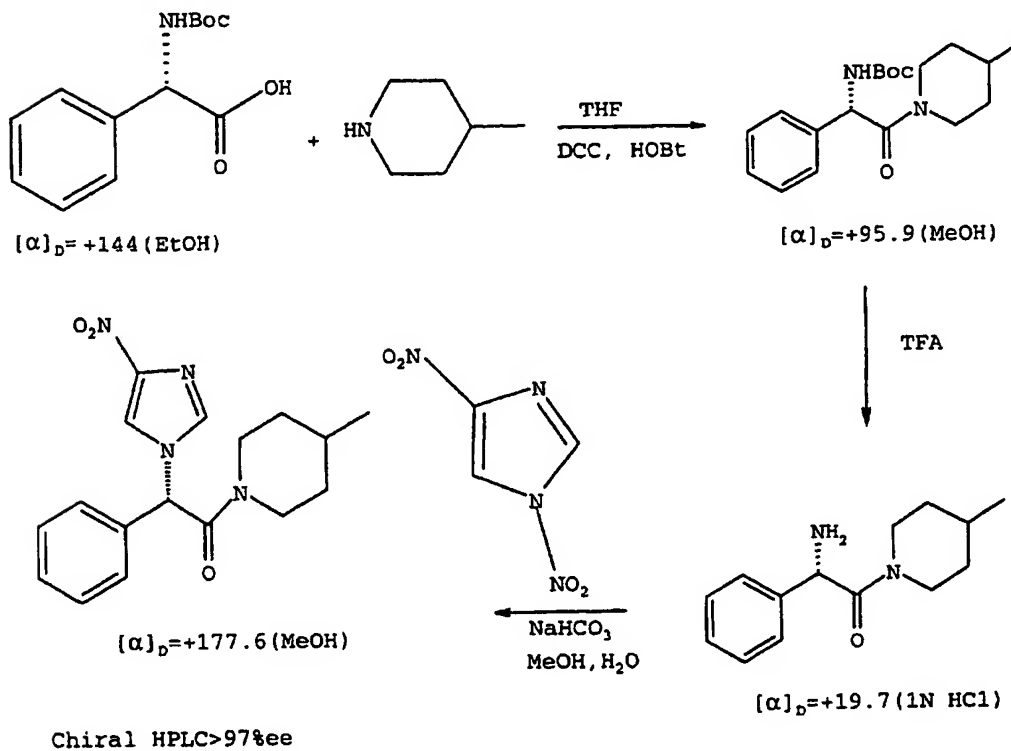
An additional method of preparing diastereomeric

25 compounds of Formula I involves the use of a chromatographic column which employs a chiral phase. An example of such a preparation may be found in Examples Part 6 as provided hereinbelow.

Two additional Schemes for providing chiral

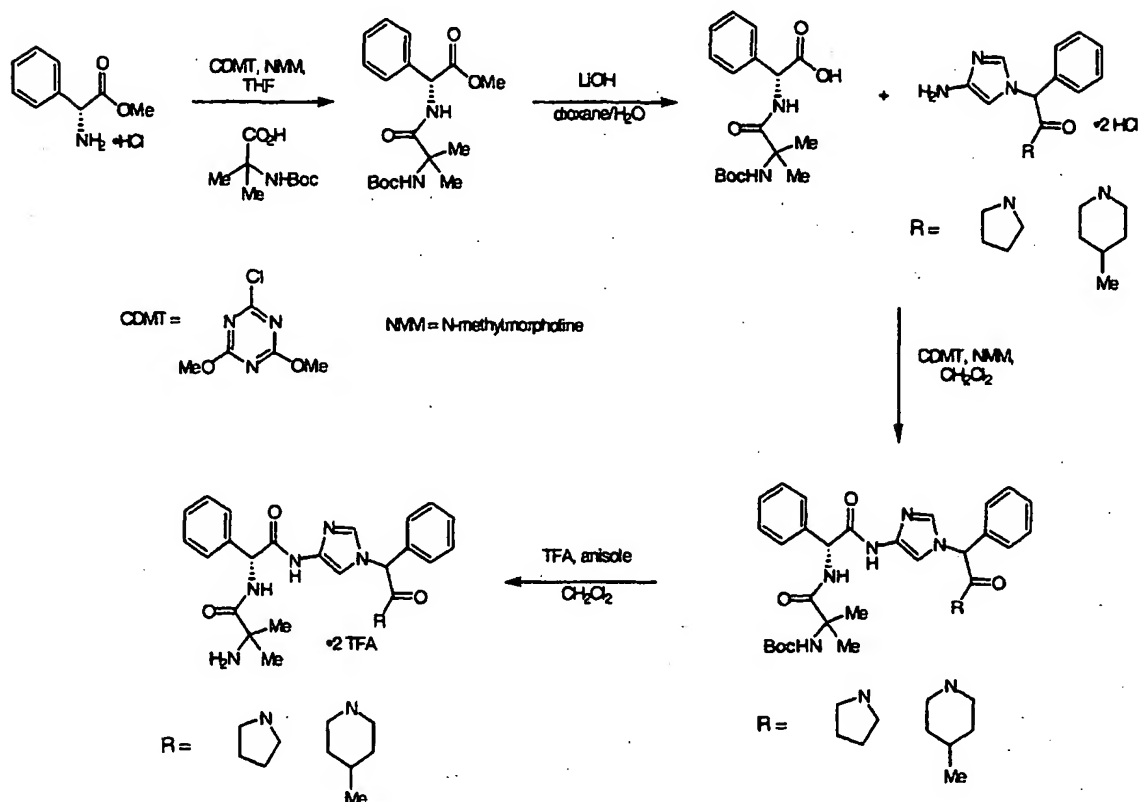
30 intermediates are provided hereinbelow as Schemes IIIA and IIIB. As described in Scheme IIIA, optically pure aryl glycine amino acids may be protected at the amino position by reaction with a suitable protecting group, such as Boc. Reaction of the Boc protected intermediate with a standard

methylation agent, such as methyl iodide, may provide the corresponding phenolic methyl ether. The carboxamide may be prepared by coupling with an amine, such as dimethylamine, pyrrolidine, or 4-methyl piperidine, using standard coupling techniques. Preferred coupling agents for the invention are diethyl cyanophosphorane (DECP), triethylamine and the amine at 0°C. The Boc protecting group may be removed under standard acidic conditions, with trifluoroacetic acid being preferred. The desired 4-nitroimidazole compounds can be prepared by reaction of the free amine with 1, 4-dinitroimidazole to give optically pure compounds, as determined by chiral HPLC. Such chiral intermediates can be processed as described in Schemes I and II to provide diastereomerically pure products. For example, the chiral nitroimidazoles described in Scheme IIIA or IIIB may be reduced under standard conditions, such as hydrogenation with a palladium catalyst, to provide the corresponding chiral amino intermediate II. Such intermediates may be subsequently coupled with compounds of formula III of Scheme II as previously described to provide a chiral intermediate which can be deprotected to give diastereomerically pure compounds of formula Ia.

**Scheme IIIA****CHIRAL SYNTHESIS of D-Phenylglycine Imidazole Subunit****Scheme IIIB****Chiral Synthesis of L-Phenylglycine Imidazole**

An additional approach and corresponding synthetic scheme for the preparation of compounds of the instant invention is provided below in Scheme IV:

5

**Scheme IV**

- 10      Compounds of Formula I may be conveniently screened for growth hormone secretagogue activity. A typical assay may employ pituitary cells established in culture, followed by a challenge with the various compounds of formula I, and the levels of growth hormone determined accordingly. Growth
- 15      hormone levels may be calculated using various radioimmunoassay techniques known to those of skill in the art. Screening of compounds for growth hormone secretagogue activity may conveniently be scaled up for high throughput screening.

The invention further encompasses methods employing the pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the compounds defined by Formula I. Although generally neutral, a compound of this invention can possess a sufficiently acidic, a  
5 sufficiently basic, or both functional groups, and accordingly react with any of a number of inorganic bases, and inorganic and organic acids, to form a pharmaceutically acceptable salt.

The term "pharmaceutically acceptable salt" as used  
10 herein refers to salts of the compounds of Formula I which are substantially non-toxic to living organisms. Typical pharmaceutically acceptable salts include those salts prepared by reaction of the compounds of the present  
15 invention with a pharmaceutically acceptable mineral or organic acid or an inorganic base. Such salts are known as acid addition and base addition salts.

Acids commonly employed to form acid addition salts are inorganic acids such as hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, hydroiodic acid, sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid, and the  
20 like, and organic acids such as *p*-toluenesulfonic, methanesulfonic acid, oxalic acid, *p*-bromophenylsulfonic acid, carbonic acid, succinic acid, citric acid, benzoic acid, acetic acid, and the like. Examples of such pharmaceutically acceptable salts are the sulfate,  
25 pyrosulfate, bisulfate, sulfite, bisulfite, phosphate, monohydrogenphosphate, dihydrogenphosphate, metaphosphate, pyrophosphate, chloride, bromide, iodide, acetate, propionate, decanoate, caprylate, acrylate, formate, isobutyrate, caproate, heptanoate, propiolate, oxalate,  
30 malonate, succinate, suberate, sebacate, fumarate, maleate, butyne-1,4-dioate, hexyne-1,6-dioate, benzoate, chlorobenzoate, methylbenzoate, dinitrobenzoate, hydroxybenzoate, methoxybenzoate, phthalate, sulfonate, xylenesulfonate, phenylacetate, phenylpropionate,  
35 phenylbutyrate, citrate, lactate,  $\gamma$ -hydroxybutyrate, glycolate, tartrate, methanesulfonate, propanesulfonate,



naphthalene-1-sulfonate, naphthalene-2-sulfonate, mandelate, mesylate, and the like. Preferred pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salts are those formed with mineral acids such as hydrochloric acid and hydrobromic acid, and  
5 those formed with organic acids such as maleic acid and methanesulfonic acid.

Salts of amine groups may also comprise quaternary ammonium salts in which the amino nitrogen carries a suitable organic group such as an alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl,  
10 or aralkyl moiety.

Base addition salts include those derived from inorganic bases, such as ammonium or alkali or alkaline earth metal hydroxides, carbonates, bicarbonates, and the like. Such bases useful in preparing the salts of this  
15 invention thus include sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, ammonium hydroxide, potassium carbonate, sodium carbonate, sodium bicarbonate, potassium bicarbonate, calcium hydroxide, calcium carbonate, and the like. The potassium and sodium salt forms are particularly preferred.

20 It should be recognized that the particular counterion forming a part of any salt of this invention is not of a critical nature, so long as the salt as a whole is pharmacologically acceptable and as long as the counterion does not contribute undesired qualities to the salt as a  
25 whole.

This invention further encompasses methods employing pharmaceutically acceptable solvates of the compounds of Formula I. Many of the Formula I compounds can combine with solvents such as water, methanol, ethanol and acetonitrile  
30 to form pharmaceutically acceptable solvates such as the corresponding hydrate, methanolate, ethanolate and acetoneitrilate.

This invention also encompasses methods employing the pharmaceutically acceptable prodrugs of the compounds of  
35 Formula I. A prodrug is a drug which has been chemically modified and may be biologically inactive at its site of

action, but which may be degraded or modified by one or more enzymatic or other *in vivo* processes to the parent bioactive form. This prodrug should have a different pharmacokinetic profile than the parent, enabling easier absorption across  
5 the mucosal epithelium, better salt formation or solubility, or improved systemic stability (an increase in plasma half-life, for example).

Typically, such chemical modifications include:

1) ester or amide derivatives which may be cleaved by  
10 esterases or lipases;

2) peptides which may be recognized by specific or nonspecific proteases; or

3) derivatives that accumulate at a site of action through membrane selection of a prodrug form or a modified  
15 prodrug form; or any combination of 1 to 3, *supra*.  
Conventional procedures for the selection and preparation of suitable prodrug derivatives are described, for example, in H. Bundgaard, *Design of Prodrugs*, (1985).

As used herein, the term "effective amount" means an  
20 amount of compound of the instant invention which is capable of inhibiting, alleviating, ameliorating, treating, or preventing further symptoms in mammals, including humans, which may be due to decreased levels of endogenous growth hormone.

25 By "pharmaceutically acceptable formulation" it is meant that the carrier, diluent, excipients and salt must be compatible with the active ingredient (a compound of Formula I) of the formulation, and not be deleterious to the recipient thereof. Pharmaceutical formulations can be  
30 prepared by procedures known in the art. For example, the compounds of this invention can be formulated with common excipients, diluents, or carriers, and formed into tablets, capsules, and the like. Examples of excipients, diluents, and carriers that are suitable for such formulations include  
35 the following: fillers and extenders such as starch, sugars, mannitol, and silicic derivatives; binding agents

such as carboxymethyl cellulose and other cellulose derivatives, alginates, gelatin, and polyvinyl pyrrolidone; moisturizing agents such as glycerol; disintegrating agents such as agar agar, calcium carbonate, and sodium bicarbonate; agents for retarding dissolution such as paraffin; resorption accelerators such as quaternary ammonium compounds; surface active agents such as cetyl alcohol, glycerol monostearate; adsorptive carriers such as kaolin and bentonite; and lubricants such as talc, calcium and magnesium stearate and solid polyethylene glycols. Final pharmaceutical forms may be: pills, tablets, powders, lozenges, syrups, aerosols, sachets, cachets, elixirs, suspensions, emulsions, ointments, suppositories, sterile injectable solutions, or sterile packaged powders, and the like, depending on the type of excipient used.

Additionally, the compounds of this invention are well suited to formulation as sustained release dosage forms. The formulations can also be so constituted that they release the active ingredient only or preferably in a particular part of the intestinal tract, possibly over a period of time. Such formulations would involve coatings, envelopes, or protective matrices which may be made from polymeric substances or waxes.

In addition, the growth hormone secretagogue compounds as disclosed herein may be administered to a patient in need of treatment in combination with other growth hormone secretagogues known in the art, and/or with a suitable bone anti-resorptive agent or agents for the prevention or treatment of osteoporosis and/or loss of muscle strength. Said suitable bone anti-resorptive agents include selective estrogen receptor modulators, bisphosphonates, calcitonin, and hormone replacement therapeutic agents. Additionally, PTH may be administered in combination with said growth hormone secretagogues. Said combination therapy may be administered concomitantly or sequentially.

-30-

Suitable dosing ranges of compounds of Formula I include 0.01 µg/kg/day to 60 mg/kg/day.

The present invention also relates to methods for the modulation of cardiac function which comprise the  
5 administration of a compound of Formula I.

The present invention further relates to methods for the treatment or prevention of congestive heart failure by administering, to an animal in need thereof, an effective amount of a compound of Formula I.

10 The present invention additionally relates to pharmaceutical formulations containing a growth hormone secretagogue alone or in combination with additional therapeutic agents useful for the treatment or prevention of congestive heart failure.

15 The use of growth hormone secretagogue compounds, for the modulation of cardiac function and for the treatment or prevention of congestive heart failure, are described in copending U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 09/137,255, filed August 19, 1998, titled "Treatment of Congestive Heart  
20 Failure With Growth Hormone Secretagogues", the teachings of which are incorporated herein in their entirety by reference.

The particular dosage of a compound required to treat, inhibit, or prevent the symptoms and/or disease of  
25 congestive heart failure in a mammal, including humans, according to this invention will depend upon the particular disease, symptoms, and severity. Dosage, routes of administration, and frequency of dosing is best decided by the attending physician. Generally, accepted and effective  
30 doses will be from 15mg to 1000mg, and more typically from 15mg to 80mg. Such dosages will be administered to a patient in need of treatment from one to three times each day or as often as needed for efficacy.

Representative pharmaceutical formulations containing  
35 compounds of formula I are provided below. The formulations which follow are given for purposes of illustration and are

-31-

not intended to be limiting in any way. The total active ingredients in such formulations comprises from 0.1% to 99.9% by weight of the formulation. The term "active ingredient" means a compound of Formula I.

5

#### Formulation 1

Hard gelatin capsules containing the following ingredients are prepared:

10	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Quantity</u> <u>(mg/capsule)</u>
	Active Ingredient	30.0
	Starch	305.0
	Magnesium stearate	5.0

15 The above ingredients are mixed and filled into hard gelatin capsules in 340 mg quantities.

#### Formulation 2

20 A tablet formula is prepared using the ingredients below:

	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Quantity</u> <u>(mg/tablet)</u>
	Active Ingredient	25.0
	Cellulose, microcrystalline	200.0
25	Colloidal silicon dioxide	10.0
	Stearic acid	5.0

The components are blended and compressed to form tablets, each weighing 240 mg.

30

#### Formulation 3

A dry powder inhaler formulation is prepared containing the following components:

	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Weight %</u>
35	Active Ingredient	5
	Lactose	95

The active mixture is mixed with the lactose and the mixture is added to a dry powder inhaling appliance.

#### Formulation 4

- 5           Tablets, each containing 30 mg of active ingredient, are prepared as follows:

	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Quantity (mg/tablet)</u>
	Active Ingredient	30.0 mg
10	Starch	45.0 mg
	Microcrystalline cellulose	35.0 mg
	Polyvinylpyrrolidone (as 10% solution in water)	4.0 mg
	Sodium carboxymethyl starch	4.5 mg
15	Magnesium stearate	0.5 mg
	Talc	<u>1.0 mg</u>
	Total	120 mg

- 20           The active ingredient, starch and cellulose are passed through a No. 20 mesh U.S. sieve and mixed thoroughly. The solution of polyvinylpyrrolidone is mixed with the resultant powders, which are then passed through a 16 mesh U.S. sieve. The granules so produced are dried at 50-60°C and passed through a 16 mesh U.S. sieve. The sodium carboxymethyl starch, magnesium stearate, and talc, previously passed through a No. 30 mesh U.S. sieve, are then added to the granules which, after mixing, are compressed on a tablet machine to yield tablets each weighing 120 mg.

#### Formulation 5

- 30           Capsules, each containing 40 mg of medicament are made as follows:

	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Quantity (mg/capsule)</u>
	Active Ingredient	40.0 mg
35	Starch	109.0 mg
	Magnesium stearate	<u>1.0 mg</u>
	Total	150.0 mg

-33-

The active ingredient, cellulose, starch, and magnesium stearate are blended, passed through a No. 20 mesh U.S. sieve, and filled into hard gelatin capsules in 150 mg quantities.

#### Formulation 6

Suppositories, each containing 25 mg of active ingredient are made as follows:

10	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Amount</u>
	Active Ingredient	25 mg
	Saturated fatty acid glycerides	2,000 mg

The active ingredient is passed through a No. 60 mesh U.S. sieve and suspended in the saturated fatty acid glycerides previously melted using the minimum heat necessary. The mixture is then poured into a suppository mold of nominal 2.0 g capacity and allowed to cool.

#### 20 Formulation 7

Suspensions, each containing 50 mg of medicament per 5.0 ml dose are made as follows:

25	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Amount</u>
	Active Ingredient	50.0 mg
	Xanthan gum	4.0 mg
	Sodium carboxymethyl cellulose (11%)	
	Microcrystalline cellulose (89%)	50.0 mg
30	Sucrose	1.75 g
	Sodium benzoate	10.0 mg
	Flavor and Color	q.v.
	Purified water to	5.0 ml

35 The medicament, sucrose and xanthan gum are blended, passed through a No. 10 mesh U.S. sieve, and then mixed with

-34-

a previously made solution of the microcrystalline cellulose and sodium carboxymethyl cellulose in water. The sodium benzoate, flavor, and color are diluted with some of the water and added with stirring. Sufficient water is then  
5 added to produce the required volume.

#### Formulation 8

Capsules, each containing 15 mg of medicament, are made as follows:

10	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Quantity</u> <u>(mg/capsule)</u>
	Active Ingredient	15.0 mg
	Starch	407.0 mg
	Magnesium stearate	<u>3.0 mg</u>
15	Total	425.0 mg

The active ingredient, cellulose, starch, and magnesium stearate are blended, passed through a No. 20 mesh U.S. sieve, and filled into hard gelatin capsules in 425 mg  
20 quantities.

#### Formulation 9

An intravenous formulation may be prepared as follows:

25	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
	Active Ingredient	250.0 mg
	Isotonic saline	1000 ml

#### Formulation 10

A topical formulation may be prepared as follows:

30	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
	Active Ingredient	1-10 g
	Emulsifying Wax	30 g
	Liquid Paraffin	20 g
	White Soft Paraffin	to 100 g

35

The white soft paraffin is heated until molten. The liquid paraffin and emulsifying wax are incorporated and



stirred until dissolved. The active ingredient is added and stirring is continued until dispersed. The mixture is then cooled until solid.

5

Formulation 11

Sublingual or buccal tablets, each containing 10 mg of active ingredient, may be prepared as follows:

	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Quantity Per Tablet</u>
10	Active Ingredient	10.0 mg
	Glycerol	210.5 mg
	Water	143.0 mg
	Sodium Citrate	4.5 mg
	Polyvinyl Alcohol	26.5 mg
15	Polyvinylpyrrolidone	<u>15.5 mg</u>
	Total	410.0 mg

The glycerol, water, sodium citrate, polyvinyl alcohol, and polyvinylpyrrolidone are admixed together by continuous stirring and maintaining the temperature at about 90°C. When the polymers have gone into solution, the solution is cooled to about 50-55°C and the medicament is slowly admixed. The homogenous mixture is poured into forms made of an inert material to produce a drug-containing diffusion matrix having a thickness of about 2-4 mm. This diffusion matrix is then cut to form individual tablets having the appropriate size.

Another formulation employed in the methods of the present invention employs transdermal delivery devices or patches. Such transdermal patches may be used to provide continuous or discontinuous infusion of the compounds of the present invention in controlled amounts. The construction and use of transdermal patches for the delivery of pharmaceutical agents is well known in the art. See, for example, U.S. Patent 5,023,252, the disclosure of which is herein incorporated by reference. Such patches may be

constructed for continuous, pulsatile, or on demand delivery of pharmaceutical agents.

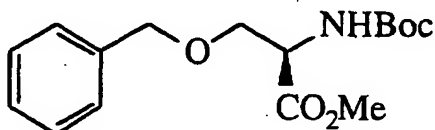
Frequently, it will be desirable or necessary to introduce the pharmaceutical composition to the brain, either directly or indirectly. Direct techniques usually involve placement of a drug delivery catheter into the host's ventricular system to bypass the blood-brain barrier. One such implantable delivery system, used for the transport of biological factors to specific anatomical regions of the body, is described in U.S. Patent 5,011,472, the disclosure of which is herein incorporated by reference.

Indirect techniques, which are generally preferred, usually involve formulating the compositions to provide for drug latentiation by the conversion of hydrophilic drugs into lipid-soluble drugs or prodrugs. Latentiation is generally achieved through blocking of the hydroxy, carbonyl, sulfate, and primary amine groups present on the drug to render the drug more lipid soluble and amenable to transportation across the blood-brain barrier. Alternatively, the delivery of hydrophilic drugs may be enhanced by intra-arterial infusion of hypertonic solutions which can transiently open the blood-brain barrier.

The following Examples and Preparations are illustrative of the processes employed in the synthesis of the compounds of the present invention. As would be understood by persons skilled in the art, other synthetic schemes may be employed to prepare the compounds of the instant invention.

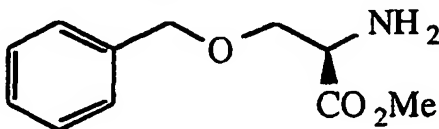
ExemplificationExample 1

5

Preparation of Chemical IntermediatesExample 1APreparation 1A

- 10 To a solution of tert-butyloxycarbonyl-O-benzyl (boc-OBz)-D-Ser-OH (25.0 g, 84.7 mmol), while stirring in anhydrous N,N-dimethylformamide (500 mL) at room temperature, was added sodium bicarbonate (14.2 g, 169 mmol) followed by methyl iodide (26.4 mL, 424 mmol). After 18
- 15 hours, the reaction mixture was concentrated to approximately 100 mL. Ethyl acetate was added and the mixture washed with aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic extract was dried and concentrated to give the above-identified product (25 g, 96%) as a light yellow oil:
- 20 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.45 (s, 9H), 3.70 (m, 1H), 3.75 (s, 3H), 3.85 (m, 1H), 4.50 (m, 3H), 7.30 (m, 5H); MS (FD) m/e 310; Anal. calc'd for C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>23</sub>NO<sub>5</sub>: C, 62.12; H, 7.49; N, 4.53. Found: C, 62.31; H, 7.49; N, 4.43.

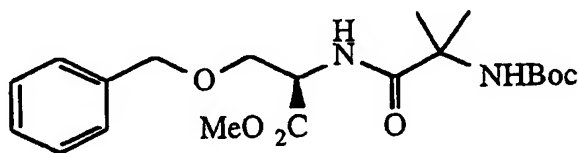
25

Preparation 1B

-38-

To a solution of a compound of Preparation 1A (5.0 g, 16 mmol), stirring in dichloromethane (25 mL)[or 40mL?] and anisole (1 mL) at 0 °C was added trifluoroacetic acid. After 4 hours at room temperature, saturated sodium bicarbonate solution was added and the mixture extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined organic extracts were washed with brine, dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated. The above-identified crude product was used in the next step without further purification.

10

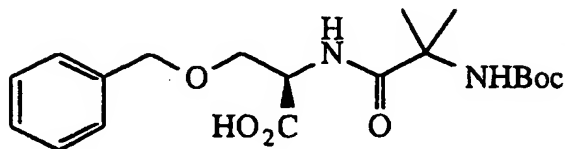
Preparation 1C

To a solution of a compound of Preparation 1B (65.4 mmol), boc- $\alpha$ -aminoisobutyric acid (13.2 g, 65.4 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (8.8 g, 65.4 mmol), and N,N-diisopropylethylamine (22.8 mL, 130.7 mmol) stirring in dichloromethane (500 mL) at 0 °C was added 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (12.3 g, 71.9 mmol). After 18 hours, ethyl acetate and saturated ammonium chloride were added and the mixture extracted with ammonium chloride, sodium bicarbonate, and brine. The organic extracts were dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (25% ethyl acetate/hexanes) yielded the above-identified product (21.6 g, 83%) as a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  1.39 (s, 9H), 1.48 (s, 6H), 3.62 (dd, J = 3.4, 9.1 Hz, 1H), 3.70 (s, 3H), 3.85 (dd, J = 3.4, 9.1 Hz, 1H), 4.48 (dd, J = 12.5, 22.7 Hz, 2H), 4.75 (m, 1H), 4.92 (s, 1H), 7.11 (d, J = 8.6 Hz, 1H), 7.35

-39-

(m, 5H); MS (FD) m/e 395; Anal. calc'd for C<sub>20</sub>H<sub>30</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>6</sub>: C, 60.90; H, 7.67; N, 7.10. Found: C, 61.02; H, 7.78; N, 7.10.

### Preparation 1



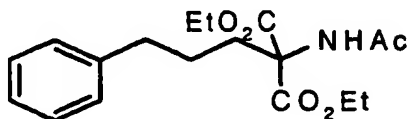
5

To a solution of a compound of Preparation 1C (5.30 g, 13.4), stirring in dioxane (100 mL)/water (50 mL) at room temperature was added lithium hydroxide (2.80 g, 67.3 mmol). After 18 hours, water was added and the solution concentrated. The resulting mixture was extracted with diethyl ether. Sodium chloride was added to the aqueous layer and the pH adjusted to 3.5 with 1 N HCl. The resulting mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and the combined organic extracts dried over sodium sulfate then concentrated to yield the above-identified product (4.40 g, 86%) as a white foam: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.39 (s, 9H), 1.45 (s, 3H), 1.47 (s, 3H), 3.68 (m, 1H), 3.95 (m, 1H), 4.54 (s, 2H), 4.70 (m, 1H), 5.51 (bs, 1H), 7.18 (d, J = 9.1 Hz, 1H), 7.25 (m, 5H), 9.90 (bs, 1H); MS (FD) m/e 381; Anal. calc'd for C<sub>19</sub>H<sub>28</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>6</sub>: C, 59.99; H, 7.42; N, 7.36. Found: C, 59.74; H, 7.26; N, 7.30.

25

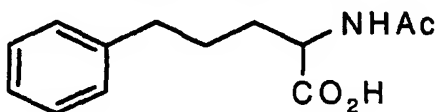
### Example 1B

#### Preparation 2A



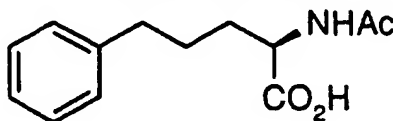
-40-

A solution of sodium ethoxide was generated by the addition of sodium metal (52.89 grams, 2.3007 mol), over 3 hours, to ethanol (1500 mL). To the sodium ethoxide solution, at ambient temperature, was added a solution of diethylacetamidomalonate (499.75 grams, 2.3007 mol) dissolved in ethanol (225 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred for 1.5 hours at ambient temperature. 1-bromo-3-phenylpropane (458.07 grams, 2.3007 mol) was then added over 15 minutes and the reaction mixture was refluxed until complete as determined by HPLC (16 hours). The reaction mixture was concentrated to dryness and the residue partitioned between ethyl acetate (1 x 1500 mL and 2 x 500 mL) and water (1500 mL). The ethyl acetate layers were combined, washed with saturated sodium chloride solution (4 x 500 mL), dried using sodium sulfate, and concentrated to give 752.1 grams (98%) of the above-identified product as a light yellow solid: A 1.0 gram sample was recrystallized from hexane:ethyl acetate (19:1, v:v) to give a mp 84-86°C.  $^1\text{H}$  nmr (  $\text{CDCl}_3$  ):  $\delta$  1.18-1.23 (t, 6H), 1.37-1.50 (m, 2H), 2.02 (s, 3H), 2.34-2.41 (m, 2H), 2.58-2.62 (t, 2H), 4.16-4.24 (q, 4H), 6.76 (s, broad, 1H), 7.11-7.28 (m, 5H).  $^{13}\text{C}$  nmr (  $\text{CDCl}_3$  ):  $\delta$  13.95, 23.03, 25.67, 31.85, 35.45, 62.46, 66.49, 125.40, 125.90, 128.27, 128.35, 141.77, 168.11, 168.94. MS (FIA ) m/z 336.3 ( $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ ). IR (KBr,  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ) 1645.98 (amide), 1744.76 ( $\text{C}=\text{O}$ ). Anal. Calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{25}\text{NO}_5$ : C, 64.46; H, 7.51; N, 4.17. Found: C, 64.60; H, 7.37; N, 4.39.

Preparation 2B

-41-

A slurry consisting of the product of Preparation 2A (249.15 grams, 0.7428 mol) and 2.5 N sodium hydroxide solution was then heated at 100 °C for three hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to 30°C and the pH adjusted to 5.0 using concentrated hydrochloric acid. The solution was then heated to 100 °C and the pH was held at 5.0 using concentrated hydrochloric acid as needed until the reaction was complete as determined by HPLC. The solution was filtered while hot through diatomaceous earth. The filtrate was cooled to 5-10 °C and the pH adjusted to 1.0 using concentrated hydrochloric acid. The resulting slurry was stirred for 1 hour at 5 °C, filtered, and dried in vacuum at 50 °C to give 160.34 grams (92%) of above-identified product, (DL)-N-acetyl-2-amino-5-phenylpentanoic acid, as a white powder, mp 145-148 °C. <sup>1</sup>H nmr ( DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>): δ 1.60-1.71 (m, 4H), 1.86 (s, 3H), 2.56-2.59 (m, 2H), 4.19-4.23 (m, 1H), 7.16-7.30 (m, 5H), 8.14 (d, 1H). <sup>13</sup>C nmr ( DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>): δ 23.17, 28.25, 31.55, 35.51, 52.55, 126.60, 129.14, 142.64, 170.25, 174.65. MS ( FIA) m/z 236.2 (M<sup>+</sup>). IR (KBr, cm<sup>-1</sup>) 1609.17 (amide), 1741.12 (C=O). Anal. Calc'd. for C<sub>13</sub>H<sub>17</sub>NO<sub>3</sub>: C, 66.36; H, 7.28; N, 5.95. Found: C, 66.41; H, 7.15; N, 5.96.

Preparation 2C

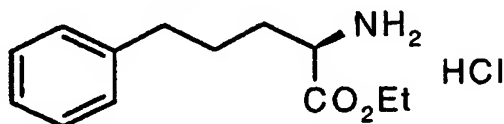
25

A solution consisting of (DL)-N-acetyl-2-amino-5-phenylpentanoic acid (Preparation 2B) (438.0 grams, 1.862 mol), cobalt chloride (1.10 grams), 2N potassium hydroxide solution (931 mL, 1.862 mol), and water (8000 mL) was adjusted to a pH of 8.0 by the addition of 2N potassium

30

-42-

hydroxide solution. To the reaction mixture was added Acylase I (*aspergillus melleus*, 39.42 grams) which was then vigorously stirred for 24 hours at 40 °C while maintaining a pH of 8.0 by addition of 2N potassium hydroxide. The  
5 resulting slurry was filtered. The filtrate was adjusted to a pH of 2.0 giving a thick slurry. The product was isolated by filtration, washed with hexane (2000 mL) and dried in vacuum at 50 °C to give 188.52 grams (43%) of the above-identified product, (D)-N-acetyl-2-amino-5-phenylpentanoic  
10 acid:  $^1\text{H}$  nmr (DMSO- $d_6$ ):  $\delta$  1.59-1.74 (m, 4H), 1.86 (s, 3H), 2.57-2.60 (m, 2H), 4.22-4.26 (m, 1H), 7.16-7.30 (m, 5H), 8.02 (d, 1H), 12.39 (s, broad, 1H).  $^{13}\text{C}$  nmr (DMSO- $d_6$ ):  $\delta$  23.18, 28.13, 31.66, 35.54, 52.58, 126.56, 129.10, 142.67, 170.12, 174.48. MS (FIA)  $m/z$  236.1 ( $M^+$ ). IR  
15 (KBr,  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ) 1625.08 (amide), 1700.24 (C=O). Anal. Calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{17}\text{NO}_3$ : C, 66.36; H, 7.28; N, 5.95. Found: C, 66.49; H, 7.00; N, 6.03.

Preparation 2D

20 A solution consisting of (D)-N-acetyl-2-amino-5-phenylpentanoic acid (Preparation 2C) (188.8 grams, 0.8024 mol), ethanol (535 mL), and concentrated hydrochloric acid (268 mL, 3.21 mol) was warmed to 85 °C. The reaction was  
25 determined to be incomplete by HPLC at 14.5 hours and additional concentrated hydrochloric acid (50 mL) was then added. This reaction was determined to be complete by HPLC after 22.5 hours. Subsequently, water was azeotropically distilled from the reaction by continuous addition and  
30 distillation of 8000 mL of ethanol. The ethanol was azeotropically distilled from the reaction by the continuous



-43-

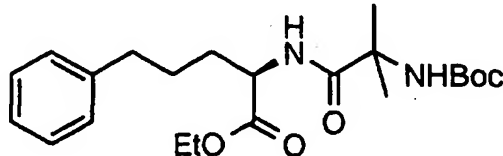
addition and distillation of ethyl acetate (2000 mL). Upon cooling the solution to 0 °C the product crystallized. The solution containing the product was stirred for 1 hour at 0 °C; filtered, and the cake dried in vacuum at 40 °C to give

5 199.0 grams (96%) of the above-identified product, 2-amino-5-phenylpentanoic acid, ethyl ester hydrochloride: (mp 117-121 °C.  $^1\text{H}$  nmr (DMSO- $d_6$ ):  $\delta$  1.15-1.21 (t, 3H), 1.50-1.89 (m, 4H), 2.48-2.67 (m, 2H), 3.92-3.98 (t, 1H), 4.08-4.25 (m, 2H), 7.12-7.29 (m, 5H), 8.76 (s, broad, 3H).  $^{13}\text{C}$  nmr

10 (DMSO- $d_6$ ):  $\delta$  13.90, 25.97, 29.52, 34.41, 51.71, 61.56, 124.91, 125.81, 128.24, 141.27, 169.35. MS (FIA ) m/z 222.3 ( $M^+$ ). IR (KBr,  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ) 1741.14 (C=O).  $[\alpha]^{20}_D = -11.17$  (c = 30.62 mg / 3mL, MeOH). Anal. Calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{20}\text{NO}_2\text{Cl}$ : C, 60.58; H, 7.82; N, 5.43. Found: C, 60.45; H, 7.67; N,

15 5.55.

#### Preparation 2E



A slurry consisting of N-t-BOC- $\alpha$ -aminoisobutyric acid (90.64 grams, 0.446 mol), 2-chloro-4,6-dimethoxy-1,3,5-triazine (75.90 grams, 0.425 mol), N-methyl morpholine (88.13 grams, 0.871 mol), and diethyl ether (1000 mL) was stirred at ambient temperature until complete as determined by HPLC (3 hours). The D-2-amino-5-phenylpentanoic acid, ethyl ester hydrochloride (Preparation 2D), (109.55 grams,

20 0.425 mol) was added and the reaction mixture stirred for 16 hours at ambient temperature. The reaction mixture was partitioned between 10% citric acid solution (1000 mL) and ethyl acetate (3 x 500 mL). The organic phase was washed with 10% citric acid solution (3 x 500 mL), saturated sodium

25 bicarbonate solution (3 x 500 mL), water (1 x 500 mL), dried

30

-44-

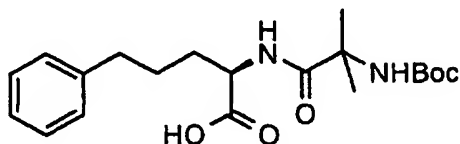
using sodium sulfate, and concentrated to dryness. The residue was recrystallized from hexane (3000 mL) to give 155.11 grams of the above-identified product: mp 97-99 °C.

$^1\text{H}$  nmr (  $\text{CDCl}_3$  ):  $\delta$  1.25-1.28 (t, 3H), 1.43 (s, 9H), 1.48 (s, 3H), 1.50 (s, 3H), 1.70-1.73 (m, 3H), 1.87-1.93 (m, 1H), 2.62-2.67 (m, 2H), 4.16-4.21 (m, 2H), 4.57-4.62 (m, 1H), 4.95 (s, 1H), 6.96 (s, broad, 1H), 7.16-7.19 (m, 3H), 7.26-7.33 (m, 2H).  $^{13}\text{C}$  nmr (  $\text{CDCl}_3$  ):  $\delta$  14.53, 26.32, 27.17, 28.67, 32.47, 35.73, 52.54, 57.17, 61.62, 126.21, 128.69, 128.79, 142.12, 154.99, 172.81, 174.69. MS (FIA ) m/z 407.5 ( $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ ). IR (KBr,  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ) 1652.75, 1685.52 (amides), 1741.73 (C=O).  $[\alpha]_D^{20} = 7.83$  (c = 10.22 mg / mL, MeOH). UV (0.1% trifluoroacetic acid in water : acetonitrile)  $\lambda_{\text{max}}$  215.6 nm.

Anal. Calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{22}\text{H}_{34}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5$ : C, 65.00; H, 8.43; N, 6.89.

Found: C, 65.23; H, 8.34; N, 6.94.

#### Preparation 2



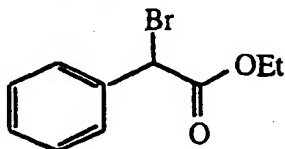
A solution consisting of the product of Preparation 2E (152.53 grams, 0.3752 mol) and tetrahydrofuran (884 mL) was cooled to 5 °C. A solution consisting of lithium hydroxide (26.96 grams, 1.126 mol) and water (1419 mL) was added to the reaction dropwise over 10 minutes while maintaining a temperature of 5-10 °C. Ethanol (183 mL) was added and the reaction stirred at 5-10 °C until complete as determined by HPLC (2 hours). The pH of the reaction mixture was then adjusted to 2.0 using 6 N hydrochloric acid solution while maintaining 5-10 °C. The product was extracted from solution with ethyl acetate (3 x 500 mL). The ethyl acetate extracts were combined, dried using sodium sulfate, and

-45-

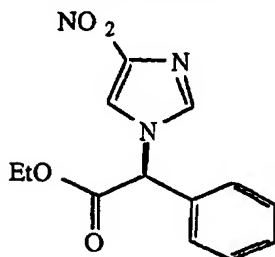
concentrated to dryness to give 141.51 grams (100%) of the above-identified product:  $^1\text{H}$  nmr (DMSO- $d_6$ ):  $\delta$  1.32-1.37 (m, 15H), 1.57-1.75 (m, 4H), 2.51-2.58 (m, 2H), 4.23-4.27 (m, 1H), 6.85 (s, broad, 1H), 7.15-7.28 (m, 5H), 7.42 (d, 1H), 12.5 (s, broad, 1H).  $^{13}\text{C}$  nmr (DMSO- $d_6$ ):  $\delta$  26.31, 27.85, 29.00, 31.86, 35.60, 52.53, 56.60, 78.95, 126.52, 129.05, 129.10, 142.69, 155.06, 174.40, 175.17. MS (FIA)  $m/z$  379.5 ( $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ ). IR (KBr,  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ) 1641.98, 1692.22 (amides), 1719.72 (C=O).  $[\alpha]_D^{20} = -5.73$  ( $c = 10.48 \text{ mg} / 1\text{mL}$ , MeOH). Anal. Calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{30}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5$ : C, 63.47; H, 7.99; N, 7.40. Found: C, 63.25; H, 7.84; N, 7.46.

### Example 1C

#### Preparation 3A

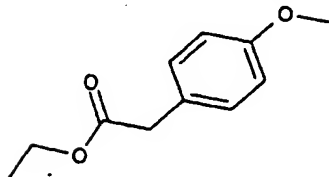


To a solution of  $\alpha$ -bromophenylacetic acid (100 g, 466 mmol), stirring in absolute ethanol (500 mL) at room temperature, was added p-toluenesulfonic acid monohydrate (10 g, 53 mmol). This solution was heated to reflux and, after 8 hours, concentrated to dryness. The resulting residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate, brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated to yield 77 g (68 %) of the above-identified product as an orange oil:  $^1\text{H}$ -NMR is consistent with structure; MS (FD) 241.9, 243.9.

Preparation 3

To a slurry of sodium hydride (13.6 g of a 60% dispersion in mineral oil, 341 mmol) stirring in N,N-dimethylformamide (240 mL) was carefully added 4-nitroimidazole (38.6 g, 341 mmol) such that the temperature during the addition was maintained below 40 °C. This resulting slurry was stirred for 1 hour and then cooled to 5 °C. To this mixture was slowly added Preparation 3A (76 g, 310 mmol) at a rate such that the reaction temperature was maintained below 20 °C. After 4 hours, the reaction was concentrated and subsequently extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined organic extracts were filtered, washed with water, brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (methanol/chloroform gradient) to yield the 60.1 g (70%) of the above-identified product as a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H-NMR is consistent with structure; MS (FD) 275 (M<sup>+</sup>); Anal. Calc'd. for: C, 56.73; H, 4.73; N, 15.27.

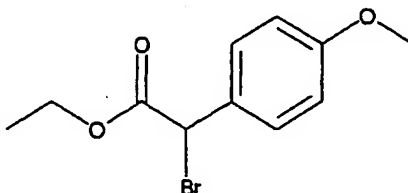
Found: C, 56.48; H, 4.78; N, 15.08.

Example 1DPreparation 4A

5

To a solution of 4-methoxyphenylacetic acid (98 g, 590 mmol), in absolute ethanol (300 mL), was added of p-toluenesulfonic acid (20 g, 105 mmol). The reaction mixture was heated to reflux and maintained at that temperature for 5 hours then cooled to room temperature and concentrated to dryness. The resulting oil was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 20% ethyl acetate/hexanes) to give 102 g (89%) of the above-identified product as a colorless oil: <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (d, DMSO) 1.17 (t, J = 8.7 Hz, 3H), 3.56 (s, 2H), 3.73 (s, 3H), 4.05 (q, J = 7.2 Hz, 2H), 6.87 (d, J = 8.7 Hz, 2H), 7.17 (d, 8.7 Hz, 2H); MS (ion spray) 195.3 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for C<sub>11</sub>H<sub>14</sub>O<sub>3</sub>: C, 68.02; H, 7.27. Found: C, 67.95, 7.17.

20

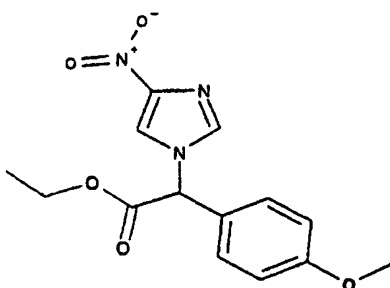
Preparation 4B

To a solution of the product of Preparation 4A (40 g, 200 mmol) in carbon tetrachloride (500 mL) was added N-bromosuccinimide (37 g, 206 mmol) and hydrobromic acid (4 drops of 48% aqueous solution). The resulting mixture was heated to reflux and maintained at that temperature for 5

-48-

hours then cooled to room temperature, filtered, and concentrated. The resulting oil was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, chloroform) to give 51.1 g (94%) of the above-identified product as a colorless oil:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 1.19 (t,  $J = 8.4$  Hz, 3H), 3.77 (s, 3H), 4.18 (m, 2H), 5.88 (s, 1H), 6.95 (d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz, 2H), 7.50 (d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz, 2H); MS (FD) 272, 274 ( $M^+$ ); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{13}\text{BrO}_3$ : C, 48.37; H, 4.80. Found: C, 48.52, 4.77.

10

Preparation 4

To a solution of the product of Preparation 4B (49.5 g, 181 mmol), stirring in dimethylformamide (500 mL) at room temperature, was added 4-nitroimidazole (20.5 g, 181 mmol) and potassium carbonate (75 g, 543 mmol). After 16 hours, the reaction mixture was filtered and concentrated. The resulting oil was partitioned between ethyl acetate and water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined organic extracts were washed with brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The resulting oil was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 30-70% ethyl acetates/hexanes gradient) to yield 33.6 g (61%) of the above-identified product as an orange oil that solidifies upon standing:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 1.17 (t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 3H), 3.78 (s, 3H), 4.25 (q,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 2H), 6.57 (s, 1H), 7.02 (d,  $J = 8.7$  Hz, 2H), 7.46 (d,  $J = 8.7$  Hz, 2H), 7.92 (s, 1H), 8.38 (s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 306 ( $M+1$ ); Anal. Calc'd for

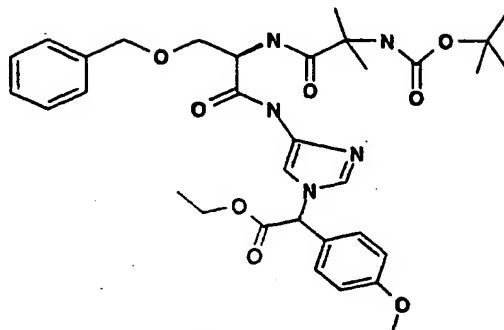
-49-

$C_{14}H_{15}N_3O_5$ : C, 55.08; H, 4.95; N, 13.76. Found: C, 54.93; H, 4.89; N, 13.82.

Example 1E

5

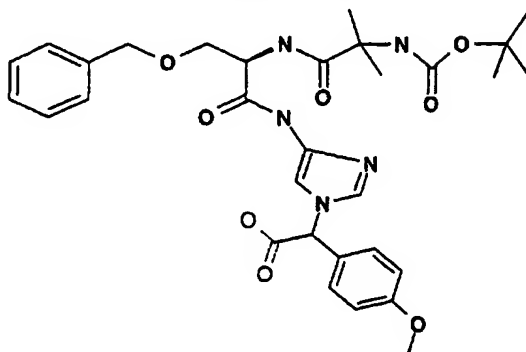
Preparation 5A



To a slurry of 10% palladium on carbon (6.0 g) was  
10 added a slurry of the product of Preparation 4 (8.4 g, 27.5  
mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (30 mL). The reaction mixture was  
placed under a hydrogen atmosphere (40 mm Hg) using a Parr  
apparatus, until the reduction was complete. The reaction  
mixture was then filtered through celite. To the resulting  
15 solution, stirring at room temperature, was added the  
product of Preparation 1 (10.5 g, 27.5 mmol), 1-  
hydroxybenzotriazole (4.1 g, 30.3 mmol) and 1-(3-  
dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (6.3 g, 30.3 mmol).  
After 16 hours, the reaction mixture was concentrated and  
20 the resulting oil was slurried in ethyl acetate and  
filtered. The solution was diluted with water and then  
extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined organic extracts  
were washed with brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered  
and concentrated. The resultant crude material was purified  
25 by flash chromatography (silica gel, 3% methanol/chloroform)  
to give 14.4 g (83%) of the above-identified product as a  
tan foam:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 1.78 (t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 3H), 1.27-

-50-

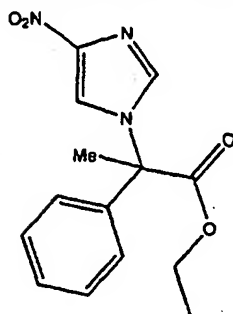
1.32 (m, 15H), 3.60 (m, 1H), 3.67 (m, 1H), 3.76 (s, 3H),  
4.20 (d, J = 7.2 Hz, 2H), 4.44 (d, J = 3.0 Hz, 2H), 4.57 (m,  
1H), 6.35 (s, 1H), 6.97 (d, J = 7.2 Hz, 2H), 7.20-7.35 (m,  
10H), 7.40 (m, 1H), 7.52 (s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 638 (M+1);  
5 Anal. Calc'd for C<sub>33</sub>H<sub>43</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>8</sub>: C, 62.15; H, 6.80; N, 10.98.  
Found: C, 62.41; H, 6.85; N, 11.09.

Preparation 5

10

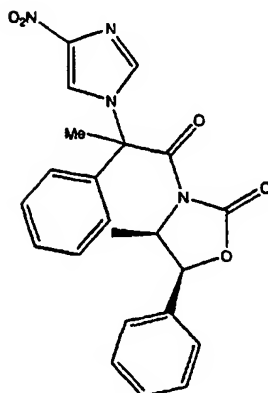
To a solution of the product of Preparation 5A (14.4 g,  
23 mmol), stirring in dioxane (150 mL) at room temperature,  
was added a solution of lithium hydroxide (0.65 g, 27.6  
mmol) in water (75 mL). After 20 minutes reaction mixture  
15 was acidified to a pH of 2.9 using 1 N hydrochloric acid.  
To the resulting solution was added water and ethyl acetate.  
The mixture was then extracted with ethyl acetate. The  
combined organic extracts were washed with brine, dried over  
sodium sulfate and concentrated to yield 13.0 g (93%) of the  
20 above-identified product as a yellow foam: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (d, DMSO)  
1.25-1.40 (m, 15H), 3.65-3.70 (m, 2H), 3.76 (s, 3H), 4.44  
(d, J = 3.4 Hz, 2H), 4.57 (m, 1H), 6.20 (s, 1H), 6.97 (d, J  
= 3.4 Hz, 2H), 7.15-7.35 (m, 10H), 7.42 (m, 1H), 7.53 (s,  
1H), 10.2 (s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 610.7 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd  
25 for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>39</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>8</sub>: C, 61.07; H, 6.45; N, 11.49. Found: C, 60.90;  
H, 6.43; N, 11.32.



Example 1FPreparation 6A

5

A solution of the product of Preparation 3 (10.00 g, 36.36 mmol) in DMF (50 mL) was added dropwise to a suspension of sodium hydride (1.60 g, 40.00 mmol) in DMF (50 mL) under nitrogen at 0 °C. The mixture was stirred 10 minutes. Ethyl iodide (2.5 mL, 40.00 mmol) was then added dropwise. The reaction mixture was subsequently stirred thirty minutes at 0 °C, and then for 1 hour at ambient temperature. The mixture was quenched with a saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate. Ethyl acetate was added and the mixture washed with bicarbonate followed by brine. The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated in vacuo. The resulting foam was purified by flash chromatography (300 g silica, 2:3 ethyl acetate/hexanes) to yield the above-identified product (8.81 g, 84%) as a light yellow foam: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) - consistent with structure; Anal. Calc'd. for C<sub>14</sub>H<sub>15</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>; 58.13 C, 5.23 H, 14.53 N; found 57.88 C, 5.36 H, 14.39 N; FDMS (M<sup>+</sup>)-289.

Preparation 6B

5

A solution of the product of Preparation 6A (8.35 g, 28.89 mmol) in THF (100 mL) was treated with lithium hydroxide (1.82 g, 43.34 mmol) and water (50 mL). The reaction was stirred at ambient temperature for 30 minutes.

10 Water was added and the mixture washed with diethyl ether. The pH of the aqueous layer was adjusted to 3.0 with 10% sodium bisulfate. The mixture was saturated with sodium chloride and washed with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate washes were combined, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered,

15 and concentrated in vacuo. The resulting crude solid was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (100 mL) under nitrogen. To this solution was added catalytic DMF (0.1 mL) and excess oxalyl chloride (25 g). This mixture was stirred for 3 hours, then concentrated in vacuo. The resulting

20 crude foam was dissolved in THF (20 mL) and added dropwise to a solution of lithium (4R,5S)-(+)-4-methyl-5-phenyl-2-oxazolidinone which was generated by adding n-BuLi (1.6M in hexanes, 19.9 mL, 31.82 mmol) dropwise to a solution of (4R,5S)-(+)-4-methyl-5-phenyl-2-oxazolidinone (5.64 g, 31.82

25 mmol) in THF (50 mL) at -78 °C under nitrogen and stirred for 20 minutes; and then used without further purification.

-53-

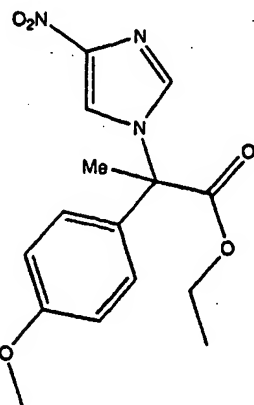
The resulting mixture was stirred at -78 °C for 30 minutes, then warmed to 0 °C. The mixture was quenched with saturated sodium bicarbonate. Ethyl acetate and water were added and the mixture washed with sodium bicarbonate and  
5 brine. The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated in vacuo. The resulting foam was purified by flash chromatography (400 g silica, 5% diethyl ether/dichloromethane) to yield diastereomer 1 (3.76 g, 31% yield) and diastereomer 2 (4.32 g, 36%) of above-identified  
10 product as colorless foams:

diastereomer 1 -  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. Calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{22}\text{H}_{20}\text{N}_4\text{O}_5$ ; 62.85 C, 4.80 H, 13.33 N; found 60.97 C, 4.64 H, 12.44 N; FDMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 420:  
diastereomer 2 -  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with  
15 structure; Anal. Calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{22}\text{H}_{20}\text{N}_4\text{O}_5$ ; 62.85 C, 4.80 H, 13.33 N; found 62.41 C, 4.82 H, 11.92 N; FDMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 420.

### Example 1G

20

### Preparation 7A

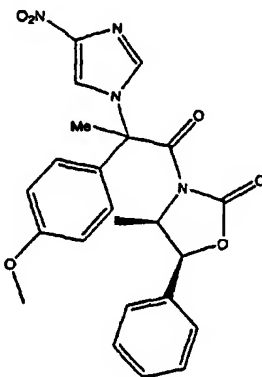


Preparation 7A was prepared, using the method of  
25 Preparation 6A, using the product of Preparation 4 (5.00 g, 16.39 mmol) in DMF (25 mL) and sodium hydride (0.72 g, 18.03

-54-

mmol) and methyl iodide 1.12 ml, 18.03 mmol) in DMF (25 mL) to yield above-identified product (4.81 g, 92%) as a light yellow foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure: Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{17}\text{N}_3\text{O}_5$ ; 56.42 C, 5.37 H, 13.16 N; found 56.13 C, 5.35 H, 13.01 N; ISMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) -320.

### Preparation 7



10

Preparation 7 was prepared, as described in Preparation 6B, using the product of Preparation 7A (4.80 g, 15.03 mmol) in THF (50 mL) and lithium hydroxide (1.26 g, 30.06 mmol) in water (25 mL) to give the crude acid. This material was immediately reacted with anhydrous dichloromethane (100 mL), catalytic DMF (0.5 mL), and excess oxalyl chloride (12 mL) to give the crude acid chloride. This crude product was then reacted with THF (20 mL),  $n\text{-BuLi}$  (1.6M in hexanes, 14.1 mL, 22.54 mmol), and (4R, 5S)-(+)-4-methyl-5-phenyl-2-oxazolidinone (4.00 g, 22.54 mmol) in THF (50 mL) to yield diastereomer 1 (2.79 g, 41% yield) and diastereomer 2 (2.80 g, 41%) of the above-identified product as colorless foams: 2) diastereomer 1 -  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{23}\text{H}_{22}\text{N}_4\text{O}_6$ ; 61.33 C, 4.92 H, 12.44 N; found 60.92 C, 4.82 H, 12.03 N; ISMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 451:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal.

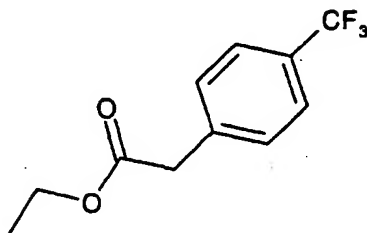
-55-

calc'd. for  $C_{23}H_{22}N_4O_6$ ; 61.33 C, 4.92 H, 12.44 N; found 61.57 C, 4.98 H, 12.47 N; ISMS ( $M^+$ ) - 451.

### Example 1H

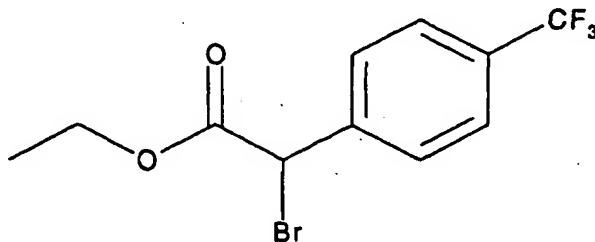
5

### Preparation 8A



10        Reaction of 4-trifluoromethylphenyl acetic acid (15.0 g, 73.4 mmol) and p-toluenesulfonic acid (2.8 g, 14.7 mmol) in absolute ethanol (100 mL) as described in Preparation 4A gave 16.3 g (95%) of the above-identified product, as a colorless oil:  $^1H$ -NMR (d, DMSO) 1.18 (t,  $J = 7.0$  Hz, 3H),  
15        3.80 (s, 2H), 4.10 (q,  $J = 7.0$  Hz, 2H), 7.49 (d,  $J = 7.9$  Hz, 2H), 7.69 (d,  $J = 7.9$  Hz, 2H); MS (FD) 232 ( $M^+$ ); Anal. Calc'd for  $C_{11}H_{11}F_3O_2$ : C, 56.90; H, 4.77. Found: C, 56.81; H, 4.85.

### Preparation 8B



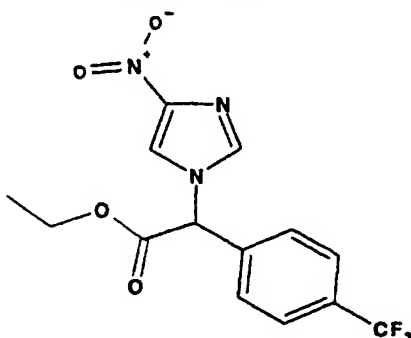
20

      Reaction of the product of Preparation of 8A (15.8 g, 68.0 mmol), N-bromosuccinimide (12.5 g, 70 mmol) and 48% HBr (3 drops) in carbon tetrachloride (80 mL) as described in  
25        Preparation 4B, gave 19.8 g (94%) of the above-identified

-56-

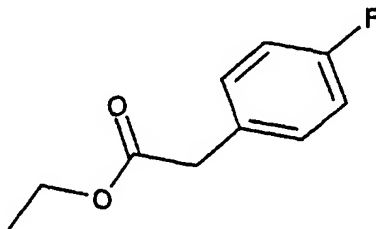
product as a colorless oil:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 1.19 (t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 3H), 4.15-4.25 (m, 2H), 6.07 (s, 1H), 7.78 (s, 4H); MS (FD) 309, 311 ( $M^+$ ); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{10}\text{BrF}_3\text{O}_2$ : C, 42.47; H, 3.24. Found: C, 42.38; H, 3.13.

5

Preparation 8

Reaction of the product of Preparation 8B (51.8 g, 167 mmol), 4-nitroimidazole (18.8 g, 167 mmol), and potassium carbonate (51 g, 368 mmol) in  $N,N$ -dimethylformamide (600 mL), as described in Preparation 4, gave 21.7 g (38%) of the above-identified product as a viscous orange oil:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 1.19 (t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 3H), 4.26 (q,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 2H), 6.80 (s, 1H), 7.76 (d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 2H), 7.83 (d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 2H), 8.01 (s, 1H), 8.51 (s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 344 ( $M+1$ ); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{12}\text{F}_3\text{N}_3\text{O}_4$ : C, 48.99; H, 3.52; N, 12.24. Found: C, 49.03; H, 3.74; N, 11.96.

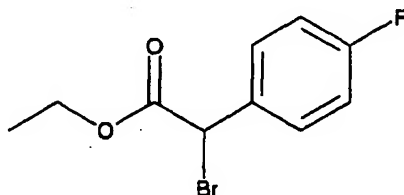
20

Example 1IPreparation 9A

Reaction of 4-fluorophenylacetic acid (15.0 g, 97.0 mmol), p-toluenesulfonic acid (2.0 g, 10.5 mmol) and absolute ethanol (100 mL), as described in Preparation 4A, gave 15.4 g (87%) of the above-identified product as a colorless oil:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 1.17 (t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 3H), 3.66 (s, 2H), 4.06 (q,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 2H), 7.10-7.20 (m, 2H), 7.25-7.35 (m, 2H); MS (FD) 182 ( $\text{M}^+$ ); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{11}\text{FO}_2$ : C, 65.92; H, 6.09. Found: C, 65.67; H, 5.96.

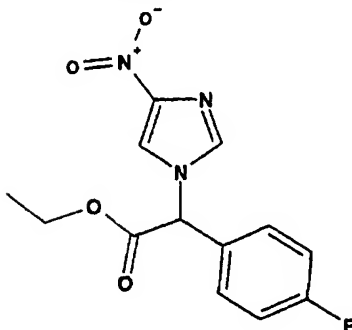
10

Preparation 9B



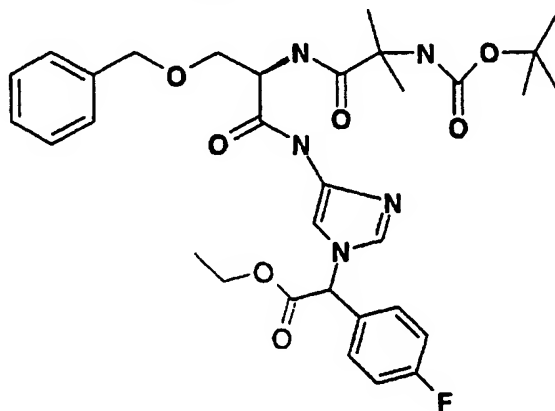
Reaction of the product of Preparation 9A (14.9 g, 82 mmol), N-bromosuccinimide (14.9 g, 84.5 mmol) and 48% HBr (4 drops) in carbon tetrachloride (80 mL) as described in Preparation 4B gave 18.3 g (85%) of the above-identified product, as follows, as a colorless oil:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 1.19 (t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 3H), 4.15-4.25 (m, 2H), 5.95 (s, 1H), 7.15-7.30 (m, 2H), 7.56-7.70 (m, 2H); MS (FD) 260, 262 ( $\text{M}^+$ ); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{10}\text{BrFO}_2$ : C, 46.00; H, 3.96. Found: C, 46.10; H, 3.95.

-58-

Preparation 9

Reaction of the product of Preparation 9B (68 g, 260  
5 mmol), 4-nitroimidazole (35.0 g, 312 mmol) and potassium  
carbonate (108 g, 780 mmol) in dimethylformamide (300 mL),  
as described in Preparation 4 gave 39.8 g (52%) of the  
above-identified product as an orange oil: <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (d, DMSO)  
1.83 (t, J = 7.2 Hz, 3H), 4.25 (q, J = 7.2 Hz, 2H), 6.66 (s,  
10 1H), 7.25-7.35 (m, 2H), 7.55-7.65 (m, 2H), 7.95 (d, 1.13 Hz,  
1H), 8.44 (d, J = 1.5 Hz, 1H); MS (ion spray) 294.2 (M+1);  
Anal. Calc'd for C<sub>13</sub>H<sub>12</sub>FN<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>: C, 53.24; H, 4.12; N, 14.33.  
Found: C, 53.51; H, 4.07; N, 14.42.

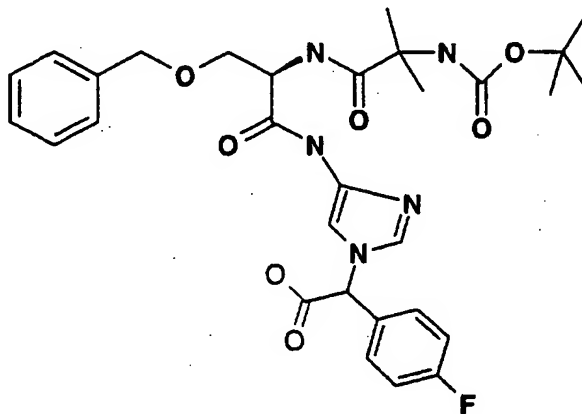
15

Example 1JPreparation 10A



Reduction of the product of Preparation 9 (8.9 g, 30.3 mmol) with 10% palladium on carbon (6.0 g) in tetrahydrofuran (120 mL) followed by coupling with the product of Preparation 1 (11.4 g, 30 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (4.5 g, 33 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (6.8 g, 33 mmol), as described in Preparation 5A, gave 10.8 g (58%) of the above-identified product as a tan foam:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 1.18 (t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 3H), 1.25-1.35 (m, 15H), 3.60 (m, 1H), 3.70 (m, 1H), 4.25 (q,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 2H), 4.44 (d,  $J = 2.6$  Hz, 2H), 4.60 (m, 1H), 6.47 (s, 1H), 7.20-7.40 (m, 9H), 7.40-7.50 (m, 3H), 7.56 (s, 1H), 10.25 (br s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 626.1 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{40}\text{FN}_5\text{O}_7$ : C, 61.43; H, 6.44; N, 11.19. Found: C, 61.63; H, 6.42; N, 11.26.

## Preparation 10



Reaction of the product of Preparation 10A (10.5 g, 17.0 mmol) and lithium hydroxide (0.48 g, 20.4 mmol) in dioxane (200 mL) and water (100 mL) as described in Preparation 5 gave 10.1 g (100%) of the above-identified product as a tan foam: <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (d, DMSO) 1.25-1.40 (m, 15H), 3.35 (br s, 1H), 3.60 (m, 1H), 3.70 (m, 1H), 4.44 (d, J = 2.6 Hz, 2H), 4.60 (m, 1H), 6.33 (s, 1H), 7.20-7.35 (m, 9H), 7.40-7.50 (m, 3H), 7.56 (s, 1H), 10.20 (br s, 1H); MS (ion

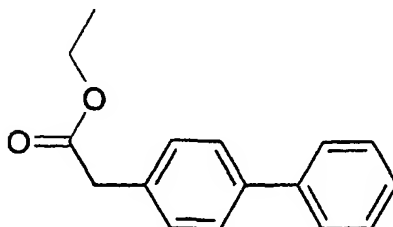
-60-

spray) 598.5 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $C_{30}H_{36}FN_5O_7$ : C, 60.29; H, 6.07; N, 11.72. Found: C, 60.38; H, 6.29; N, 11.49.

### Example 1K

5

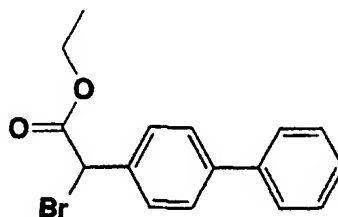
#### Preparation 11A



Reaction of biphenylacetic acid (25.2 g, 119 mmol) and  
10 p-toluenesulfonic acid (3.3 g, 17 mmol) in absolute ethanol  
(250 mL), as described in Preparation 4A gave 25.4 g (89%)  
of the above-identified product as a yellow oil:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  is  
consistent with structure; MS (FD) 240.1 (M+); Anal. Calc'd  
for  $C_{16}H_{16}O_2$ : C, 79.97; H, 6.71. Found: C, 79.75; H, 6.59.

15

#### Preparation 11B

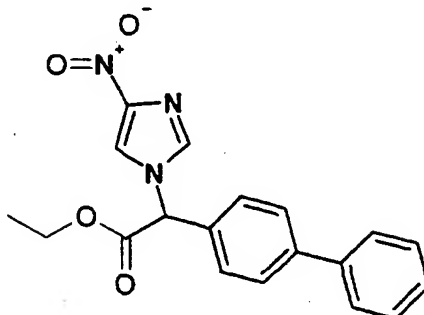


Reaction of the product of Preparation 11A (18.0 g,  
20 75.0 mmol), N-bromosuccinimide (13.7 g, 77.25 mL) and 48%  
HBr (4 drops) in carbon tetrachloride (80 mL), as described  
in Preparation 4B, gave 22.56 g (94%) of above-identified  
product as a yellow oil:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  is consistent with  
structure; MS (FD) 318, 320 (M+); Anal. Calc'd for

-61-

$C_{16}H_{15}BrO_2 \cdot 0.05$ Hydrochloric acid<sub>3</sub>: C, 60.21; H, 4.74. Found: C, 59.50; H, 4.75.

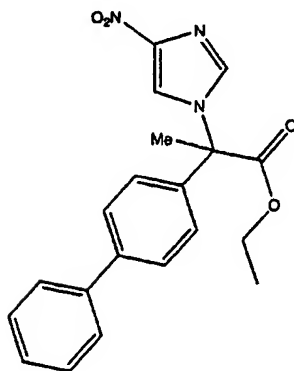
Preparation 11



5

- To a slurry of sodium hydride (2.42 g, 60.5 mmol) stirring in dimethylformamide (200 mL) at room temperature, was added 4-nitroimidazole (6.9 g, 60.5 mmol). After 10 minutes, the product of Preparation 11B (17.62 g, 55.0 mmol) was added. After 16 hours, the reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was slurried in ethyl acetate then filtered. The resulting oil was partitioned between ethyl acetate and water then extracted with ethyl acetate.
- 15 The combined organic extracts were washed with brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The resulting oil was absorbed onto silica gel and purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 30-50% ethyl acetate/hexanes) to yield 12.0 g (62%) of the above-
- 20 identified product as a yellow viscous oil:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  is consistent with structure; MS (FD) 351 (M+).

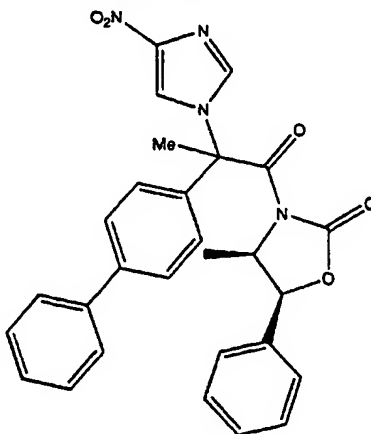
Example 1L  
Preparation 12A



5

Preparation 12A was prepared as described in Preparation 3, using the product of Preparation 11 (11.03 g, 31.39 mmol) in DMF (50 mL) and sodium hydride (1.25 g, 31.39 mmol) and methyl iodide (1.9 ml, 31.39 mmol) in DMF (50 mL) to yield the above-identified product (10.25 g, 89%) as a light yellow foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with the following structure: Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{19}\text{N}_3\text{O}_4$ ; 65.75 C, 5.26 H, 11.50 N; found 63.84 C, 5.16 H, 10.94 N; ISMS (M+) - 366.

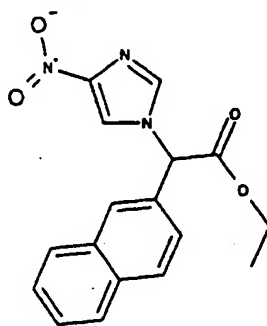
Preparation 12



-63-

Preparation 12 was prepared as described in Preparation 6B, using the product of Preparation 12A, (10.20 g, 27.92 mmol) in THF (100 mL) and lithium hydroxide (2.34 g, 55.84 mmol) in water (50 mL) to give the crude acid. The resulting crude solid was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (150 mL) and reacted with catalytic DMF (0.5 mL) and excess oxalyl chloride (23 mL). The resulting crude foam was dissolved in THF (50 mL) and reacted with n-BuLi (1.6M in hexanes, 25.1 mL, 40.28 mmol), (4R, 5S)-(+)-4-methyl-5-phenyl-2-oxazolidinone (7.14 g, 40.28 mmol), and THF (150 mL) to yield diastereomer 1 (6.21 g, 45% yield) and diastereomer 2 (6.20 g, 45%) of the above-identified product as colorless foams:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with the structure: Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{24}\text{N}_4\text{O}_5$ ; 66.93 C, 4.99 H, 11.56 N; found 65.32 C, 5.06 H, 10.66 N; ISMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 497:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{24}\text{N}_4\text{O}_5$ ; 66.93 C, 4.99 H, 11.56 N; found 65.05 C, 4.92 H, 10.61 N; FDMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 497.

20

Example 1MPreparation 13A

25 A suspension of 2-naphthyl acetic acid (49.37 g, 265.0 mmol) and thionyl chloride (80 mL) in carbon tetrachloride (55 mL) was heated to reflux for 20 minutes at which time all material went into solution. The reaction was cooled to

-64-

ambient temperature. Carbon tetrachloride (125 mL), N-bromosuccinamide (56.60 g, 318.0 mmol), and hydrobromic acid (48% aq., catalytic, 0.5 mL) were added. The mixture was heated to reflux for 30 minutes, cooled to ambient

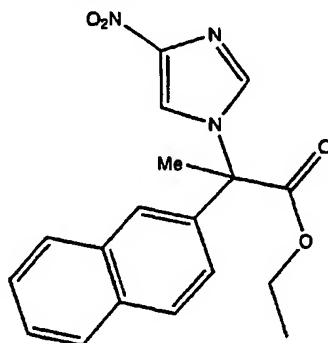
5 temperature, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The material was redissolved in dichloromethane (200 mL) and excess ethanol (100 mL) was added dropwise. The mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 1 hour, then concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was chromatographed (700 g

10 silica, 30% ethyl acetate/hexane) to yield a crude tan solid. This crude material was dissolved dimethylformamide (200 mL) and 4-nitroimidazole (29.78 g, 263.5 mmol) and potassium carbonate (72.70 g, 526.8 mmol) were added. The reaction was stirred at ambient temperature, then

15 concentrated *in vacuo* to 100 mL. Ethyl acetate and water were added and the mixture washed with sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was chromatographed (1.0 kg silica, 30% ethyl acetate/hexane) to

20 yield the above-identified product (Preparation 13A) (40.2 g, 47%), as follows, as a brown foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{15}\text{N}_3\text{O}_4$ ; 62.76 C, 4.65 H, 12.92 N; found 60.54 C, 4.35 H, 12.04 N; ISMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 326.

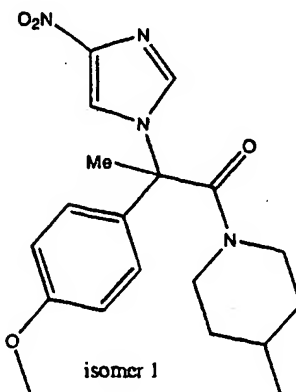
25

Preparation 13

-65-

Preparation 13 was prepared, as described in Preparation 6A, using the product of Preparation 13A (13.9 g, 42.65 mmol) in DMF (50 mL) and sodium hydride (1.71 g, 42.65 mmol) and methyl iodide (2.64 mL, 42.65 mmol) in DMF (50 mL) to yield the above-identified product (10.94 g, 77%) as a light yellow oil:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{17}\text{N}_3\text{O}_4$ ; 63.71 C, 5.05 H, 12.38 N; found 63.80 C, 4.98 H, 12.41 N; ISMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 340.

10

Example 1NPreparation 14

15

The product of Preparation 7, diastereomer 1 (1.00g, 2.22 mmol) in THF (50 mL) was added to a solution of lithium hydroxide (0.10 g, 2.44 mmol) in water (25 mL). The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 30 minutes. Water was added and the mixture washed with diethyl ether. The pH of the aqueous layer was adjusted to 3.0 with 10% aqueous sodium bisulfate. The mixture was saturated with sodium chloride and washed with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate washes were combined, dried over

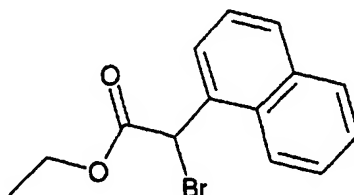
-66-

sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated in vacuo. The resulting crude solid was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (50 mL) under nitrogen. To this solution was added catalytic DMF (0.1 mL) and excess oxalyl chloride  
5 (5 g). This mixture was stirred 3 hours, then concentrated in vacuo.

The resulting crude foam was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (50 mL) and cooled to 0 °C. 4-  
dimethylaminopyridine (catalytic, 10 mg) and 4-  
10 methylpiperidine (0.34 mL, 2.71 mmol) were added and the resulting solution stirred for 18 hours. The resulting crude foam was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (50 mL) washed with sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and  
15 concentrated in vacuo. The crude foam was purified by flash chromatography (silica, 100 g, 5% methanol/dichloromethane) to yield the above-identified product (0.38 g, 50% yield) as a colorless foam: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for C<sub>19</sub>H<sub>24</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>4</sub>; 61.28 C, 6.50 H,  
20 15.05 N; found 61.38 C, 6.40 H, 15.11 N; FDMS (M+) - 372.

### Example 10

#### Preparation 15A



25

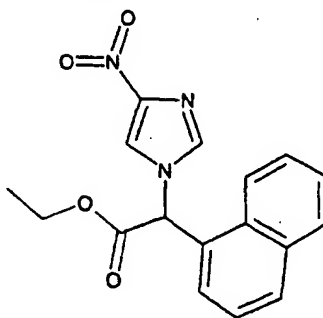
Reaction of 1-naphthylacetic acid (9.3 g, 50 mmol) in carbon tetrachloride (35 mL) was added thionyl chloride (14.4 mL, 200 mmol). The reaction was heated to reflux.  
30 After 30 minutes, the mixture was cooled to 20 °C and a



-67-

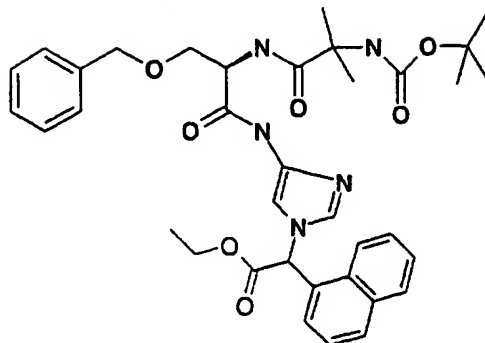
solution, of N-bromosuccinimide (8.9 g, 50 mmol) and 48% HBr in carbon tetrachloride, (8 drops) was then added. The reaction was heated to reflux and after 30 minutes, cooled to ambient temperature, filtered and concentrated. The resulting oil was added to absolute ethanol at 0 °C and then concentrated. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 3% ethyl acetate/hexanes) to yield 12.6 g (86%) of the above-identified product as an oil: <sup>1</sup>H-NMR is consistent with structure.

10

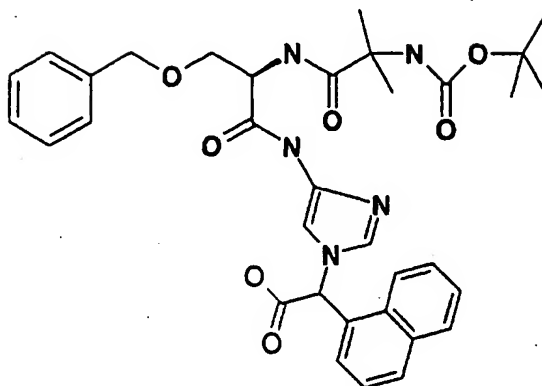
Preparation 15B

To a slurry of sodium hydride (1.6g, 40 mmol) stirring in dimethylformamide (50 mL) at room temperature was added 4-nitroimidazole (4.5 g, 40 mmol). The reaction was cooled to 0 °C and then the product of Preparation 15A (11.8 g, 40 mmol) was added. The mixture was then slowly warmed to ambient temperature. The reaction was poured into an ice/water mixture and extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined organic extracts were washed with water, brine, dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 40% ethyl acetate/hexanes) to yield 6.03 g (50%) of above-identified product as an oil: <sup>1</sup>H-NMR is consistent with structure; MS (ion spray) 325.1 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for C<sub>17</sub>H<sub>15</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>·0.37H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 61.50; H, 4.78; N, 12.66. Found: C, 61.46; H, 4.60; N, 12.73.

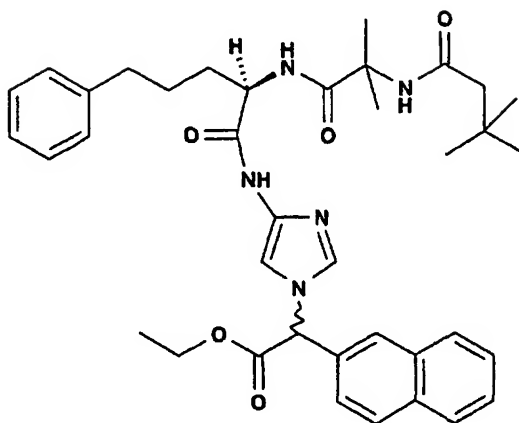
-68-

Preparation 15C

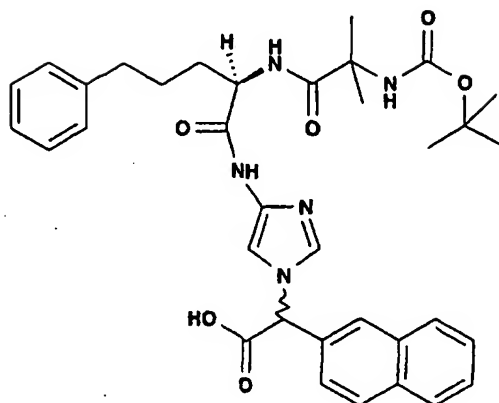
To a slurry of 10% palladium on carbon (0.6 g) in tetrahydrofuran was added a solution of the product of Preparation 15B (1.28 g, 4.0 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (20 mL). The mixture was reacted under a hydrogen atmosphere (40 psi) on a Parr apparatus for 3 hours and subsequently filtered through celite. To this solution was added of the product of Preparation 1 (1.5 g, 3.96 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.59 g, 4.35 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (0.9 g, 4.35 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (30 mL). After 16 hours, the reaction mixture was filtered and concentrated. The resulting residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, chloroform to 1% methanol/chloroform gradient) to yield 1.99 g (77%) of the above-identified product as an orange foam: <sup>1</sup>H-NMR is consistent with structure; MS (ion spray) 657 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for C<sub>36</sub>H<sub>43</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>7</sub>: C, 65.74; H, 6.59; N, 10.65. Found: C, 65.67; H, 6.53; N, 10.87.

Preparation 15

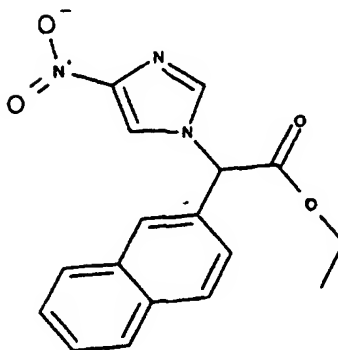
5        To a solution of the product of Preparation 15C (1.97g, 3.0 mmol) stirring in dioxane (20 mL) at room temperature was added a solution of lithium hydroxide (0.08 g, 3.3 mmol) in water (10 mL). After 15 minutes, the reaction was acidified to pH = 3.0 with 1 N hydrochloric acid and  
10        extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined organic extracts were washed with brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to yield 1.8 g (95%) of the desired product (Preparation 15). <sup>1</sup>H-NMR is consistent with structure; MS (ion spray) 630 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for C<sub>34</sub>H<sub>39</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>7</sub>·1.05H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 62.96; H, 6.39; N, 10.80. Found: C, 63.09; H, 6.39; N, 10.40.  
15

Example 1PPreparation 466

- 5 To a suspension of 5% palladium on carbon (2.60 g) and tetrahydrofuran (100 mL), in a Parr reaction bottle, was added the product of Preparation 136 from Examples Part 2A (5.00 g, 15.3 mmol) as a solid. The reaction bottle was placed on a Parr shaker, and shaken at room temperature for
- 10 2 h under a hydrogen atmosphere (40 psi). The reaction was filtered through a pad of Celite 521 and the filtrate was then added to a previously prepared mixture of the product of Preparation 2 from Examples Part 2A (5.80 g, 15.3 mmol), 1,3-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (3.48 g, 16.9 mmol) and 1-
- 15 hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate (2.29 g, 16.9 mmol) in 50 mL tetrahydrofuran at 0°C. The reaction was stirred for 16 h at room temperature, then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate and the 1,3-dicyclohexylurea was filtered away. The
- 20 filtrate was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 80% ethyl acetate/hexanes - 5% methanol/ethyl acetate) to give the desired product as a light yellow solid foam (7.96 g, 80%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR consistent with structure; MS (IS) m/e 656 (M + 1); Anal. Calc'd for C<sub>37</sub>H<sub>45</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>6</sub>: C, 67.77; H, 6.92;
- 25 N, 10.68. Found: C, 67.49; H, 6.88; N, 11.71.

Preparation 467

To a solution of the product of Preparation 466 (8.73 g, 13.3 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (120 mL) and water (60 mL) at room temperature was added lithium hydroxide (2.23 g, 53.2 mmol). The reaction stirred 35 min at room temperature, at which time the tetrahydrofuran was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was diluted with water and extracted with diethyl ether (the ether extracts were discarded). The aqueous layer was acidified (pH 2-3) with 1N HCl and then extracted with diethyl ether and ethyl acetate. The combined organic layers were washed with brine, dried (sodium sulfate) and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the desired product as a light yellow solid foam that was used without further purification (8.18 g, 98%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR consistent with structure; MS (IS) m/e 628 (M + 1); Anal. Calc'd for C<sub>35</sub>H<sub>41</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>6</sub>: C, 66.97; H, 6.58; N, 11.16. Found: C, 66.68; H, 6.75; N, 11.12.

Example 10Preparation 136

- 5 To a suspension of 2-naphthyl acetic acid (49.37 g, 265.0 mmol) in carbon tetrachloride (55 mL) was added and thionyl chloride (80 mL). The mixture was heated to reflux for 20 minutes then cooled to ambient temperature. Carbon tetrachloride (125 mL), N-bromosuccinimide (56.60 g, 318.0
- 10 mmol) and hydrobromic acid (48% aq., 0.5 mL) were added. The mixture was heated to reflux for 30 min, cooled to ambient temperature, filtered, and concentrated. The resulting material was dissolved in dichloromethane (200 mL) and excess ethanol (100 mL) was added dropwise. After 1 h,
- 15 the reaction was concentrated and the resulting crude material was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 30% ethyl acetate/hexane) to yield a tan solid. This crude material was dissolved dimethylformamide (200 mL) and 4-nitroimidazole (29.78 g, 263.5 mmol) and potassium carbonate
- 20 (72.70 g, 526.8 mmol) were added. After 16 h, the reaction was concentrated to 100 mL. Ethyl acetate and water were added and the mixture washed with sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated. The crude material was purified by flash
- 25 chromatography (silica, 30% ethyl acetate/hexane) to yield 40.2 g (47%) of the desired product as a brown foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd.

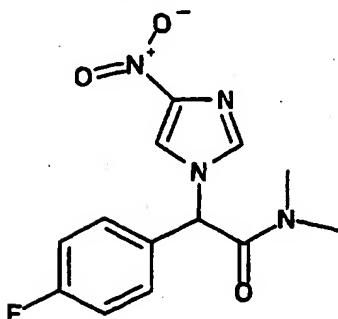
-73-

for  $C_{17}H_{15}N_3O_4$ ; 62.76 C, 4.65 H, 12.92 N; found 60.54 C, 4.35 H, 12.04 N; ISMS (M+) - 326.

Example 1R

5

Preparation 74

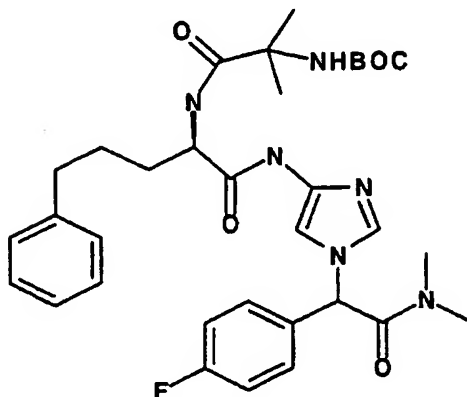


To a solution of the compound of Preparation 9 (17.0 g, 58.0 mmol) stirring at room temperature was added to sodium hydroxide (125 mL of a 2N aqueous solution) along with tetrahydrofuran (10 mL) and ethanol (10 mL). After hydrolysis was complete, the mixture was cooled in an bath and acidified to pH 2.75 with aqueous hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined organic extracts were washed with water, dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated to provide 15.0 g (99%) of the desired carboxylic acid. The crude material was combined with aqueous N,N-dimethyl amine (40%, 9.0 mL, 71.8 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate (7.64 g, 56.6 mmol) and 1,3-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (11.7 g, 56.6 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (150 mL). After 18 h, the mixture was concentrated and the residue slurried in ethyl acetate, filtered, and the filtrate concentrated. Purification of the concentrate by flash chromatography (silica gel, chloroform/methanol) provided 10.2 g (62%) of the desired product: ESMS: (M+H)<sup>+</sup> 293.1. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 8.21 (d, 1H, J = 1.51 Hz) 7.80 (d, 1H, J = 1.13 Hz), 7.60-

-74-

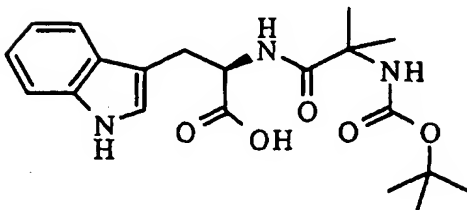
7.50 (m, 2H), 7.38-7.25 (m, 2H), 6.88 (s, 1H), 2.92 (s, 3H), 2.86 (s, 3H). Anal. Calc'd. for  $C_{13}H_{13}N_4O_3$ : C, 53.43; H, 4.48; N, 19.17. Found: C, 53.43; H, 4.71; N, 19.07.

5

Preparation 75

The product of Preparation 74 (2.0 g (6.85 mmol) was combined with 10% palladium/carbon (1.80 g) and  
10 palladium/black (0.20 g) in tetrahydrofuran (75 mL) and the mixture shaken under a hydrogen atmosphere (38 psi) in a Parr apparatus. After reduction was complete, the catalyst was removed by filtration through celite and the resulting solution was immediately added to a solution of 1,3-  
15 dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (1.51 g, 7.3 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (1.0 g, 7.3 mmol), the product of Preparation 2 (2.77 g, 7.3 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (50 mL) at room temperature. After 16 h, the mixture was concentrated and the residue slurried in ethyl acetate then  
20 filtered. The filtrate was concentrated and resulting crude product purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, chloroform/methanol) which afforded 3.47 g (81%) of the desired product: ESMS:  $(M+H)^+$  623.5, 624.6.  $^1H$  NMR was consistent with product. Anal. Calc'd. for  $C_{33}H_{43}N_6O_4F$ . 0.02  
25  $CHCl_3$ : C, 63.44; H, 6.94; N, 13.44. Found: C, 63.04; H, 7.41; N, 11.93.



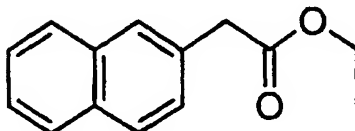
Example 1SPreparation 1L

- 5 N-Methyl morpholine (4.79 mL, 2 eq, 47.3 mm) was added to a stirred slurry of N-Boc-a-aminoisobutyric acid (4.43 g, 21.7 mm, 1 eq) and 3.89 g (21.7 mm, 1.0 eq) of 2-chloro-(4,6)-dimethoxy-1,3,5-triazine (CDMT) in 100 mL of diethyl ether. After stirring the reaction mixture at ambient temperature for 1.5 hours, D-tryptophan ester hydrochloride was added. After stirring overnight, the reaction mixture was quenched by the addition of 150 mL of 10% aqueous citric acid solution. The layers were separated and the ether layer was washed with 50 mL of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution and 50 mL of water. Lithium hydroxide (2.43 g, 5 eq) was dissolved in 100 ml of water and the solution was added to the diethyl ether solution and stirred vigorously for 4 hours at room temperature. The layers were separated and the pH of the aqueous layers was adjusted to 5.6 with 1M HCl. The pH was then adjusted to 3.95 with 10% citric acid solution and the aqueous layer was extracted with 100 mL of ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate layers were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate and filtered. The volatiles were removed under vacuum to give 82 % yield of the desired product as a white foam. 1H-NMR consistent with structure.

Example 1TPreparation R1

5

Ethyl 2-(2-Naphthyl)acetate

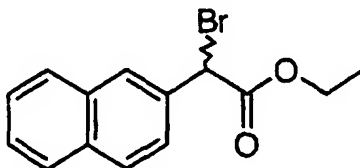


A steady stream of anhydrous hydrochloric acid was  
10 bubbled subsurface into a solution of 2-naphthylacetic acid  
(251.38 grams, 1.35 mol) dissolved in ethanol (1760 mL) over  
a period of 10 minutes. The resulting solution was stirred  
at ambient temperature until complete as determined by hplc  
(2 hours). The reaction mixture was concentrated to  
15 dryness. The resulting oil was dissolved in ethyl acetate  
(200 mL) and filtered through silica gel (300 grams) eluting  
the product with ethyl acetate (1400 mL). The filtrate was  
concentrated to give 286.33 grams (99%) of ethyl 2-(2-  
naphthyl)acetate as a colorless oil. MS (FIA) m/z 215.3  
20 [(M+H)<sup>+</sup>]. <sup>1</sup>H nmr (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>): δ 1.15-1.24 (t, 3H), 3.81-3.86  
(d, 2H), 4.07-4.15 (q, 2H), 7.41-7.55 (m, 3H), 7.80-7.92 (m,  
4H).

Preparation R2

25

Ethyl 2-Bromo-2-(2-naphthyl)acetate

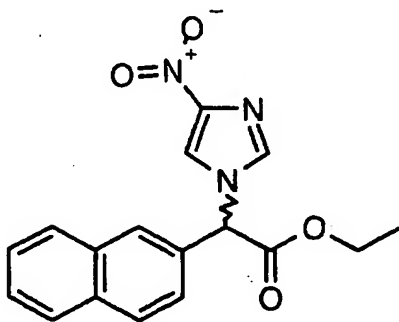


-77-

A solution consisting of ethyl 2-(2-naphthyl)acetate (1.07 grams, 5.0 mmol), N-bromosuccinimide (0.89 grams, 5.0 mmol), benzoyl peroxide (0.05 grams), and carbon tetrachloride (50 mL) was heated at reflux until complete as determined by hplc (3 hours). The reaction was cooled to ambient temperature, washed with water (2 x 25 mL), dried using sodium sulfate, and filtered. The filtrate was concentrated to dryness. The residue was purified using a Biotage Flash 40M system eluting with hexane : ethyl acetate (49:1) to give 1.20 grams (82%) of ethyl 2-bromo-2-(2-naphthyl) acetate, mp 80-82° C. MS (FIA) m/z 293.0 [(M+H)<sup>+</sup>]. Anal. calcd. for C<sub>14</sub>H<sub>13</sub>O<sub>2</sub>Br: C: 57.36; H: 4.47. Found: C: 57.62; H: 4.54. <sup>1</sup>H nmr (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 1.27-1.33 (t, 3H), 4.18-4.36 (m, 2H), 5.56 (s, 1H), 7.52-7.55 (m, 2H), 7.71-7.76 (m, 1H), 7.82-7.92 (m, 3H), 7.97 (s, 1H).

### Preparation R3

Ethyl 2-(2-Naphthyl)-2-(4-nitroimidazolyl)acetate



A yellow slurry consisting of ethyl 2-bromo-2-(2-naphthyl) acetate (384.04 grams, 1.31 mol), 4-nitroimidazole (148.13 grams, 1.31 mol), potassium carbonate (362.11 grams, 2.62 mol), and dimethyl formamide (2500 mL) was stirred at ambient temperature until complete as determined by hplc (16

-78-

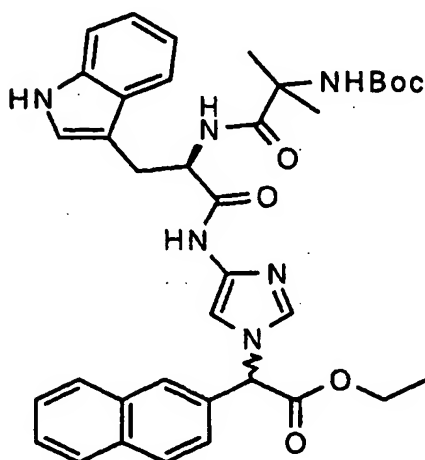
hours). The reaction mixture was diluted with water (2000 mL) and extracted with ethyl acetate (4 x 500 mL). The organic extracts were combined and washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (2 x 500 mL), 10% citric acid solution (2 x 500 mL), saturated sodium chloride solution (2 x 500 mL), dried using sodium sulfate, and evaporated. A portion (50 grams) of the crude product was purified by column chromatography on silica gel eluting with dichloromethane : heptane (16:3) gradient to dichloromethane : heptane : methanol (16:3:0.2) giving 30.99 grams of ethyl 2-(2-naphthyl)-2-(4-nitroimidazolyl)acetate which was 90% pure by hplc. A 1 gram sample of the product was purified a second time using a Biotage Flash 40S system eluting with dichloromethane : heptane : methanol (16.9:3:0.1) to give 0.90 grams (46%) of ethyl 2-(2-naphthyl)-2-(4-nitroimidazolyl)acetate as a tan oil. MS (FIA) m/z 326.4 [(M+H)<sup>+</sup>]. <sup>1</sup>H nmr (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 1.25-1.31 (t, 3H), 4.28-4.39 (m, 2H), 6.16 (s, 1H), 7.36-7.44 (dd, 1H), 7.54-7.62 (m, 3H), 7.84-7.90 (m, 3H), 7.90-7.95 (m, 2H).

20

Preparation R4

Ethyl 2-[4-((2R)-2-{2-[(Tert-butoxy)carbonylamino]-2-methylpropanoylamino}-3-indol-3-ylpropanoylamino)imidazolyl]-2-(2-naphthyl)acetate

5



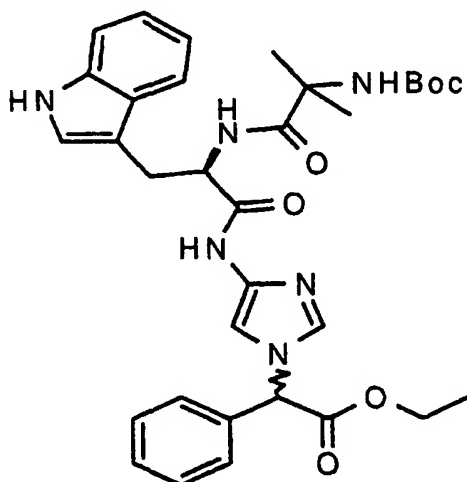
A mixture of ethyl 2-(2-naphthyl)-2-(4-nitroimidazolyl) acetate (2.04 grams, 6.27 mmol), tetrahydrofuran (20 mL),  
 10 and 10% palladium on carbon (2.04 gram) was hydrogenated at ambient temperature and pressure until complete as determined by hplc (20 hours). The catalyst was removed by filtration and rinsed with tetrahydrofuran (10 mL). The filtrate was added to a slurry consisting of 1-[3-(dimethyl  
 15 amino)propyl-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (1.20 grams, 6.27 mmol), tetrahydrofuran (10 mL), and (2R)-2-(2-[(tert-butoxy)carbonylamino]-2-methylpropanoylamino)-3-indol-3-ylpropanoic acid (2.44 grams, 6.27 mmol) and stirred 16 hours at ambient temperature. The reaction mixture was  
 20 partitioned between water (150 mL) and ethyl acetate (3 x 50 mL). The organic extracts were combined, washed with saturated sodium chloride solution, dried using sodium sulfate, and evaporated. The resulting crude oil was purified by column chromatography on silica gel with hexane

-80-

: ethyl acetate : methanol (10:10:1) as an eluent giving 1.72 grams (41%) of ethyl 2-[4-((2R)-2-{2-[(tert-butoxy)carbonylamino]-2-methylpropanoylamino}-3-indol-3-ylpropanoyl amino)imidazolyl]-2-(2-naphthyl)acetate. A 0.2 gram sample  
5 was further purified using preparative reverse phase hplc to give 0.16 grams of ethyl 2-[4-((2R)-2-{2-[(tert-butoxy)carbonylamino]-2-methylpropanoylamino}-3-indol-3-ylpropanoyl amino)imidazolyl]-2-(2-naphthyl)acetate for analytical study. MS (FIA) m/z 667.4 [(M+H)<sup>+</sup>]. Anal. calcd. exact  
10 mass for C<sub>37</sub>H<sub>43</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>6</sub> [(M+H)<sup>+</sup>] = 667.3244. Exact mass found by mass spectrometry: C<sub>37</sub>H<sub>43</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>6</sub> [(M+H)<sup>+</sup>] = 667.3254. <sup>1</sup>H nmr (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): 1.25-1.42 (m, 19H), 3.24-3.33 (m, 2H), 4.28-4.33 (m, 2H), 4.98-5.01 (m, 1H), 5.94 (s, 1H), 6.85-7.01 (m, 3H), 7.18-7.21 (m, 2H), 7.35-7.39 (m, 2H), 7.49-7.58 (m, 4H),  
15 7.78-7.84 (m, 4H), 8.69 (s, 1H), 10.65 (s, broad, 1H).

#### Preparation R5

Ethyl 2-[4-((2R)-2-{2-[(Tert-butoxy)carbonylamino]-2-methyl  
20 propanoylamino}-3-indol-3-ylpropanoylamino)imidazolyl]-2-phenylacetate



-81-

This compound was obtained from the reduction of ethyl 2-(4-nitroimidazolyl)-2-phenylacetate and subsequent reaction with (2R)-2-(2-[(tert-butoxy) carbonylamino]-2-methyl propanoylamino)-3-indole-3-ylpropanoic acid as a yellow foam in 73% yield after purification by flash chromatography using dichloromethane : methanol (19:1) as the eluent. MS (FIA) m/z 617.5 [(M+H)<sup>+</sup>]. <sup>1</sup>H nmr (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 1.19-1.32 (m, 18H), 3.10-3.12 (m, 1H), 3.16-3.17 (m, 1H), 3.32 (s, 1H), 4.22-4.27 (m, 2H), 4.69 (s, broad, 1H), 6.44 (s, 1H), 6.85-6.91 (m, 2H), 7.00 (t, 1H), 7.07-7.08 (m, 1H), 7.38-7.40 (m, 1H), 7.42-7.45 (m, 6H), 7.55-7.56 (m, 2H), 10.16 (s, broad, 1H), 10.75 (s, 1H).

15

### Example 2

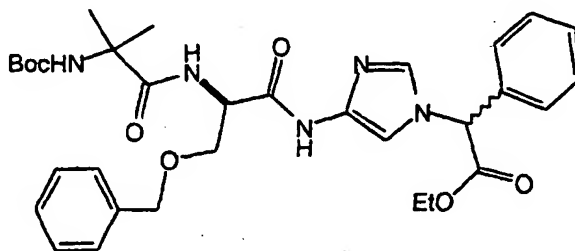
#### Synthesis of Formula I Compounds

Compounds of the present invention were synthesized as described below.

20

### Example 2-1

#### Preparation EX1A



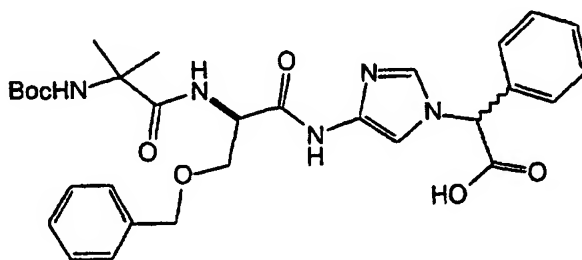
To a suspension of 5% Pd/C (0.85 g) and a compound of Preparation 3 (2.13 g, 7.21 mmol) stirring in dioxane (50 mL) at room temperature was added hydrogen (g) (35 psi) on a Parr apparatus. After 4 hours, the mixture was purged with nitrogen, celite added, and the solution filtered through a pad of celite. To the resulting filtrate, under nitrogen

-82-

atmosphere, was added a compound of Preparation 1 (2.74 g, 7.21 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.97 g, 7.21 mmol), N,N-diisopropylethylamine (2.5 mL, 14.4 mmol), and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (1.36 g, 7.93 mmol). After 18 hours, ethyl acetate was added and the mixture washed with saturated aqueous ammonium chloride, saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate, and brine. The organic extract was dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (5% methanol/dichloromethane) yielded the above-identified compound (1.25 g, 29 %) as a yellow foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.30 (t,  $J = 6.9$  Hz, 3H), 1.40 (s, 9H), 1.42 (s, 3H), 1.51 (s, 3H), 3.60 (dd,  $J = 5.1, 9.7$  Hz, 1H), 4.05 (m, 1H), 4.28 (m, 2H), 4.54 (dd,  $J = 14.08, 26.3$  Hz, 2H), 4.62 (m, 1H), 5.08 (bs, 1H), 5.82 (s, 1H), 7.12 (d,  $J = 11.5$  Hz, 1H), 7.35 (m, 12H), 9.75 (bs, 1H); MS (FD)  $m/e$  607; Anal. calc'd for  $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{41}\text{N}_5\text{O}_7$ : C, 63.29; H, 6.80; N, 11.52. Found: C, 63.07; H, 6.81; N, 11.74.

20

## Preparation EX1B

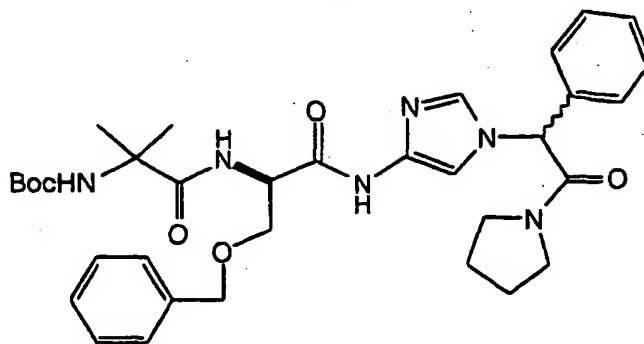


To a solution of a compound of Preparation EX1A (5.3 g, 8.75), stirring in dioxane (50 mL)/water (25 mL) at room temperature, was added lithium hydroxide (0.73 g, 17.50 mmol). After 20 minutes, water was added and the reaction concentrated to approximately 30 mL. The resulting mixture was extracted with diethyl ether and the aqueous layer saturated with sodium chloride then adjusted to pH 3.5 with



1 N HCl. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and the combined organic extracts dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated to yield the above-identified compound (4.90 g, 97%) as a light orange foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) d ; MS (FD) m/e ; Anal. calc'd for : C, ; H, ; N, . Found: C, ; H, ; N,.

## Preparation EX1C



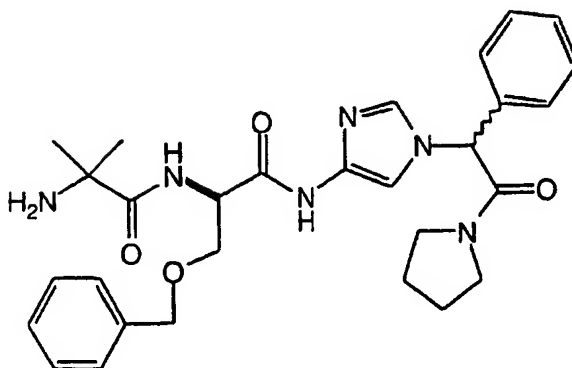
10

To a solution of a compound of Preparation EX1B (2.09 g, 3.61 mmol), pyrrolidine (0.30 mL, 3.61 mmol), and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.54 g, 3.97 mmol) stirring in anhydrous DMF (50 mL) at 0 °C was added 1,3-dicyclohexyl carbodiimide (0.82 g, 3.97 mmol). After 18 hours at room temperature, the reaction mixture was concentrated, dissolved in dichloromethane, filtered, and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (5% methanol/dichloromethane) yielded the above-identified compound (1.74 g, 76%) as a light orange solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) d 1.41 (s, 9H), 1.43 (s, 3H), 1.52 (s, 3H), 2.88 (m, 4H), 3.42 (m, 1H), 3.50 (m, 4H), 4.08 (m, 1H), 4.55 (dd, J = 14.9, 27.4 Hz, 2H), 4.70 (m, 1H), 4.96 (d, J = 4.0 Hz, 1H), 5.86 (s, 1H), 7.15 (d, J = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 7.35 (m, 12H), 9.28 (bs, 1H); MS (FD) m/e 632; Anal. calc'd for  $\text{C}_{34}\text{H}_{44}\text{N}_6\text{O}_6$ :

25

-84-

C, 64.54; H, 7.01; N, 13.28. Found: C, 63.48; H, 6.95; N, 12.19.

Compound 1

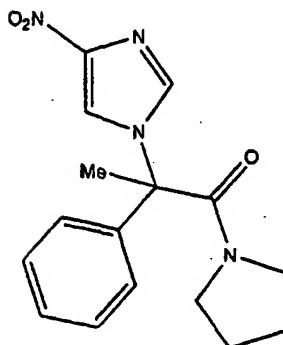
5

To a solution of a compound of Preparation EX1C (1.00 g, 1.58 mmol) and anisole (0.3 mL), stirring in anhydrous dichloromethane (12 mL) at 0 °C, was added trifluoroacetic acid (3 mL) and the reaction mixture was then warmed to room temperature. After 4 hours, the dichloromethane was removed *in vacuo* and excess diethyl ether added. After 20 minutes, the reaction mixture was filtered to yield the above-identified compound (1.02 g, 85%) as a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.60 (s, 6H), 1.90 (m, 4H), 3.08 (m, 1H), 3.58 (m, 3H), 3.88 (m, 2H), 4.52 (m, 2H), 4.72 (m, 1H), 6.10 (m, 2H), 7.25 (m, 6H), 7.46 (m, 5H), 7.70 (m, 1H), 8.00 (m, 1H), 8.40 (m, 1H), 11.15 (m, 1H); MS (FD) m/e 532 (M-2TFA); Anal. calc'd for C<sub>33</sub>H<sub>38</sub>F<sub>6</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>8</sub>: C, 52.10; H, 5.03; N, 11.05. Found: C, 51.54; H, 5.25; N, 11.21.

20

-85-

Example 2-2  
Preparation EX2A



isomer 1

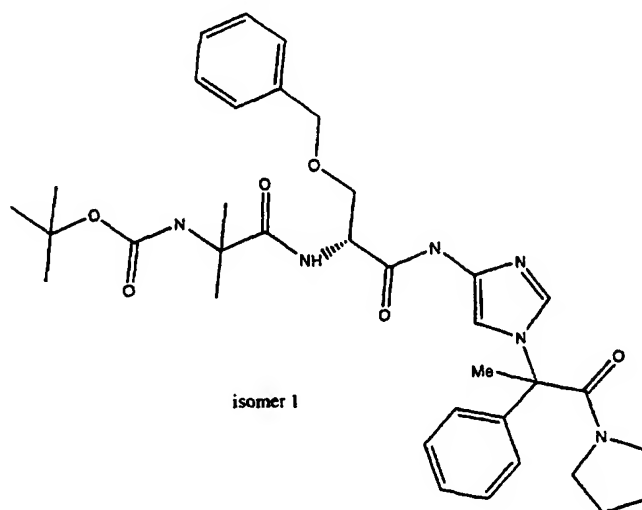
5

A solution of the product of Preparation 6B, diastereomer 1 (2.30 g, 5.48 mmol) in THF (50 mL) was added to a solution of lithium hydroxide (0.25 g, 6.03 mmol) in water (25 mL). The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 30 minutes. Water was added and the mixture washed with diethyl ether. The pH of the aqueous layer was adjusted to 3.0 with 10% aqueous sodium bisulfate. The mixture was saturated with sodium chloride and washed with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate washes were combined, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated in vacuo. The resulting crude solid was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (50 mL) under nitrogen. To this solution was added catalytic DMF (0.1 mL) and excess oxalyl chloride (5 g). This mixture was stirred for 3 hours, then concentrated in vacuo. The resulting crude foam was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (50 mL) and cooled to 0 °C. 4-Dimethylaminopyridine (catalytic, 10 mg) and pyrrolidine (1.8 mL, 18.74 mmol) were added and the resulting solution was stirred for 18 hours. Dichloromethane was then added and the mixture washed with sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic layer was dried

-86-

over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated in vacuo. The crude foam was purified by flash chromatography (silica, 100 g, 5% methanol/dichloromethane) to yield the above-identified product (1.73 g, 88% yield) as a colorless foam:

5  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{18}\text{N}_4\text{O}_3$ ; 61.14 C, 5.77 H, 17.82 N; found 60.67 C, 5.78 H, 16.03 N; FDMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 314.

Preparation EX2B

10

A solution of the product of Preparation EX2A (1.66 g, 5.29 mmol) in THF (5 mL) was added to a suspension of 5% palladium on carbon (0.80 g, catalytic, 25 mL THF) under inert atmosphere. The resulting mixture was placed under hydrogen (40 psi) on a Parr shaker for 1.5 hours. The resulting mixture was placed under nitrogen and celite added. The mixture was then filtered and rinsed with THF. The filtrate was place under nitrogen and HOBt (0.71 g, 5.29

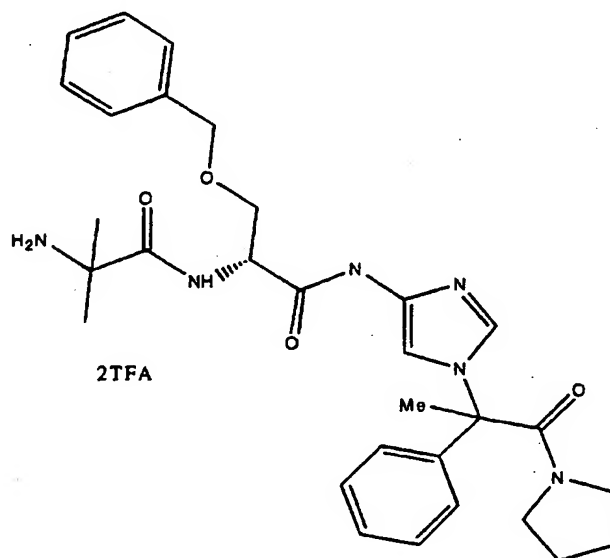
15 mmol), the product of Preparation 1 (2.01 g, 5.29 mmol), EDC (1.00 g, 5.81 mmol), and DIEA (1.0 mL, 5.81 mmol) were added. The resulting mixture was stirred for 18 hours at ambient temperature, then concentrated in vacuo. The crude material was dissolved in ethyl acetate and washed with

20

-87-

sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated in vacuo. The resulting crude foam was purified by flash chromatography (silica, 100 g, 2% methanol/dichloromethane) to yield the above-identified product (0.66 g, 19% yield) as a light yellow foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{35}\text{H}_{46}\text{N}_6\text{O}_6$ ; 65.00 C, 7.17 H, 12.99 N; found 63.21 C, 6.92 H, 12.54 N; FDMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 646.

10

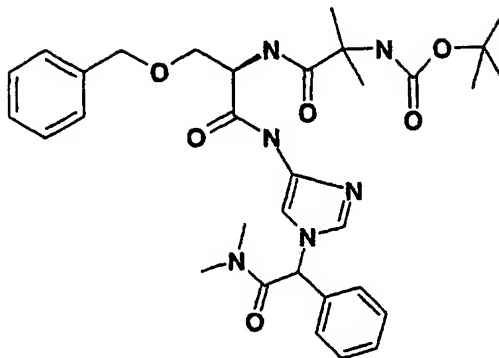
Compound 2

A solution of the product of Preparation EX2B (0.52 g, 0.80 mmol) in dichloromethane (20 mL) was stirred under nitrogen with anisole (0.4 mL) and trifluoroacetic acid (4.0 mL) at ambient temperature for 3 hours. The mixture was concentrated in vacuo to approximately 5 mL and excess diethyl ether added. The mixture was filtered and rinsed with diethyl ether to yield the above-identified product (0.40 g, 65% yield) as an off white solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for

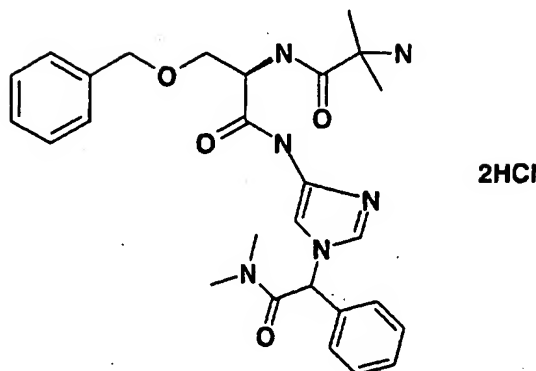
$C_{34}H_{40}N_6O_8F_6$ ; 52.71 C, 5.20 H, 10.85 N; found 52.60 C, 5.08 H, 10.69 N; FDMS (M+) - 546.

5

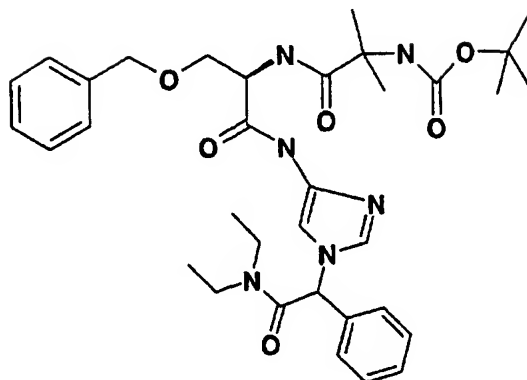
## Example 2-3

Preparation 193

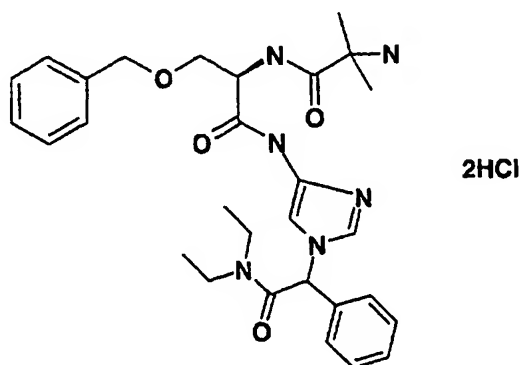
To a solution of Preparation EX1B (1.0 g, 1.7 mmol), N,N-dimethylamine hydrochloride, 0.14 g (1.7 mmol),  
10 triethylamine, 0.26 mL (1.9 mmol) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole, 0.26 g (1.9 mmol) in 70 mL of dimethylformamide was added 0.4 g (1.9 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide. The reaction mixture was stirred overnight then concentrated. The  
15 residue was slurried in ethyl acetate, filtered and water was added. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined organic extracts were washed with brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel using 4%  
20 methanol/chloroform as eluant to yield 0.58 g (56%) of the above-identified product as a white foam:  $^1H$ -NMR is consistent with structure; MS (FD) 606 (M+); Anal. Calc'd for  $C_{32}H_{42}N_6O_6$ : C, 63.35; H, 6.98; N, 13.85. Found: C, 63.18; H, 7.03; N, 13.84.

Compound 3

To a solution of the product of Preparation 193, 0.5 g (0.82  
5 mmol) in 12 mL of dichloromethane was added 4 mL of  
trifluoroacetic acid. After stirred for 1 hour, water was  
added. The reaction was quenched with solid sodium  
bicarbonate and was extracted with chloroform. The combined  
organic extracts were washed with brine, dried over sodium  
10 sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The residue was  
dissolved in ethyl acetate and hydrochloric acid-saturated  
ether was added. The resulting slurry was concentrated to  
yield 0.4 g (85%) of the above-identified product as a  
yellow solid:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  is consistent with structure; MS (FD)  
15 506.4 ( $\text{M}^+$ ); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{27}\text{H}_{34}\text{N}_6\text{O}_4 \cdot 2.9\text{HCl}$ : C, 53.85; H,  
4.50; N, 13.95. Found: C, 53.91; H, 6.14; N, 13.76.

Example 2-4Preparation 194

Reaction of the product of Preparation EX1B (1.0 g, 1.7  
5 mmol), diethylamine (0.18 mL, 1.7 mmol), 1-  
hydroxybenzotriazole (0.26 g, 1.9 mmol), 1-(3-  
dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (0.4 g, 1.9 mmol),  
dimethylformamide (80 mL), as described in Preparation 193  
gave 0.53 g (49%) of the above-identified product as a  
10 yellow foam:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  is consistent with structure; MS (FD)  
634.3 (M+).

Compound 4

15 Reaction of the product of Preparation 194 (0.52 g, 0.82  
mmol), trifluoroacetic acid (4 mL), dichloromethane (12 mL)  
as described in Compound 3, gave 0.47 g (100%) of the above-  
identified product as a white solid:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  is consistent  
with structure; MS (FD) 534.1 (M+); Anal. Calc'd for

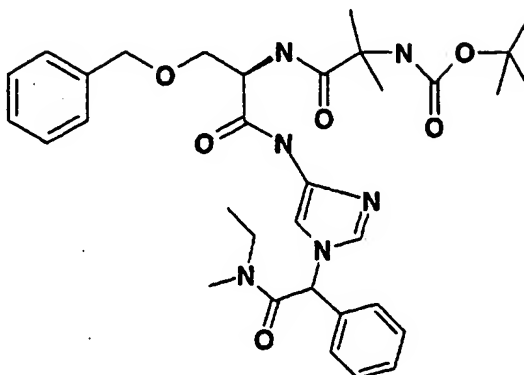


-91-

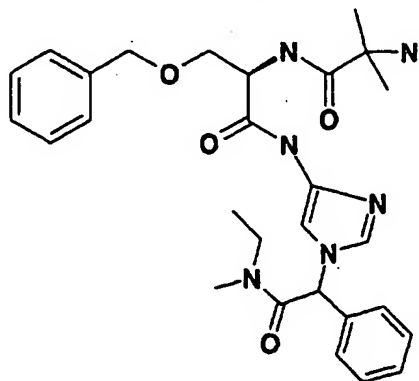
$C_{29}H_{38}N_6O_4 \cdot 2.4HCl$ : C, 55.99; H, 6.54; N, 13.51. Found: C, 55.88; H, 6.91; N, 13.32.

**Example 2-5**

5

**Preparation 195**

Reaction of the product of Preparation EX1B (1.0 g, 1.7 mmol), N,N-methylethylamine (0.15 mL, 1.7 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.26 g, 1.9 mmol), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (0.4 g, 1.9 mmol), dimethylformamide (40 mL), as described in Preparation 193, gave 0.56 g (56%) of the above-identified product as a tan foam:  $^1H$ -NMR is consistent with structure; MS (FD) 620 (M+); Anal. Calc'd for  $C_{33}H_{44}N_6O_6$ : C, 63.85; H, 7.15; N, 13.54. Found: C, 63.45; H, 7.19; N, 13.15.

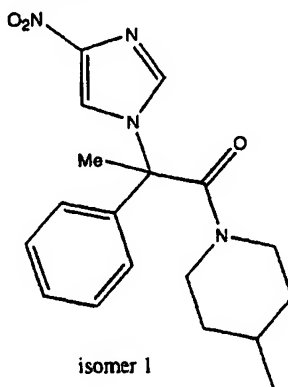
**Compound 5****2HCl**

-92-

Reaction of the product of Preparation 195 (0.4 g, 0.64 mmol), trifluoroacetic acid (2 mL), dichloromethane (6 mL), as in Compound 3 gave 0.32 g (84%) of the above-identified product as a yellow solid:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  is consistent with structure; MS (FD) 520 (M<sup>+</sup>); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{36}\text{N}_6\text{O}_4 \cdot 2.2\text{HCl}$ : C, 55.97; H, 6.41; N, 13.99. Found: C, 56.11; H, 6.23; N, 13.60.

### Example 2-6

#### Preparation EX3A

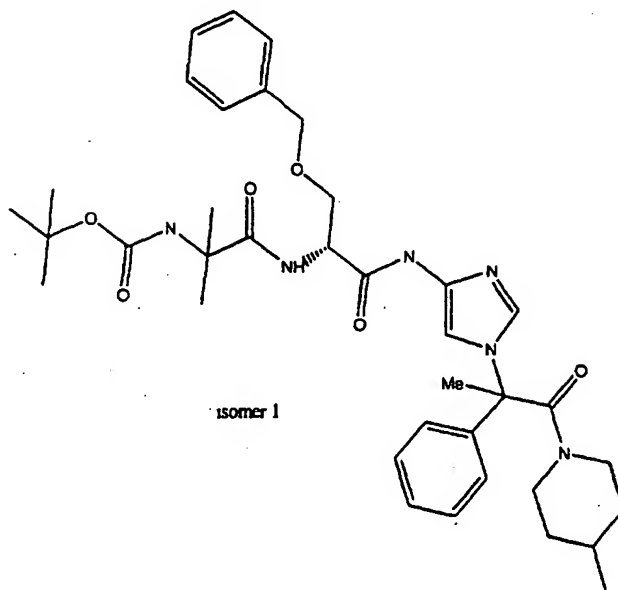


Prepared as in Preparation EX2A using the product of Preparation 6B, diastereomer 1 (1.88 g, 5.44 mmol) in THF (50 mL) and lithium hydroxide (0.23 g, 5.63 mmol) in water (25 mL) to give a crude acid. The resulting crude solid was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (50 mL) and reacted with catalytic DMF (0.1 mL) and excess oxalyl chloride (5 g) to give the crude acid chloride. The resulting crude foam was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (50 mL) and reacted with 4-Dimethylaminopyridine (catalytic, 10 mg), L-proline methyl ester hydrochloride (0.90 g, 5.44 mmol), and N,N-diethylisopropylamine (2.8 mL, 16.31 mmol) to yield the above-identified product (1.21 g, 65% yield) as a colorless foam:  $^1\text{H NMR}$  (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure;

-93-

Anal. calc'd. for  $C_{18}H_{22}N_4O_3$ ; 63.14 C, 6.48 H, 16.36 N; found 63.29 C, 6.45 H, 15.29 N; FDMS (M+) - 342.

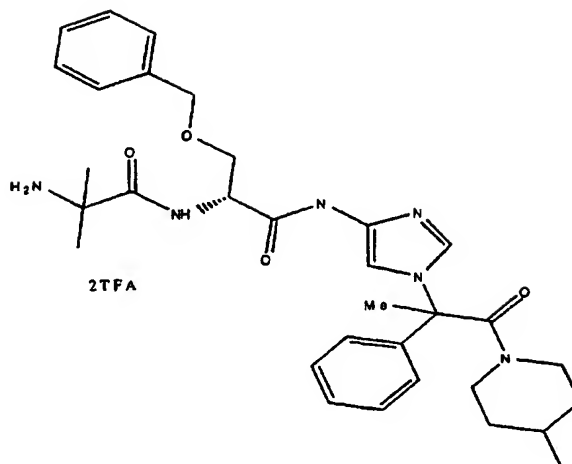
## Preparation EX3B



5

Prepared as in Preparation EX2B using the product of Preparation EX3A (1.21 g, 3.53 mmol) and 5% palladium on carbon (0.80 g, catalytic, 25 mL THF) to give the crude amine. The resulting filtrate was reacted with HOBT (0.48 g, 3.53 mmol), the product of Preparation 1 (1.34 g, 3.53 mmol), diisopropylethylamine (0.6 mL, 3.53 mmol), and EDCI (0.67 g, 3.88 mmol) to yield the above-identified product (0.97 g, 41% yield) as a light yellow foam:  $^1H$  NMR (300 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ ) - consistent with structure: Anal. calc'd. for  $C_{37}H_{50}N_6O_6$ ; 65.85 C, 7.47 H, 12.45 N; found 64.96 C, 7.48 H, 12.04; FDMS (M+) - 675.

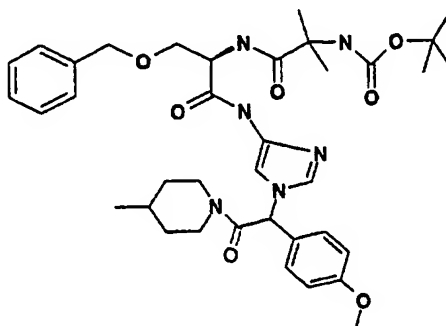
-94-

Compound 6

Prepared as in Example 2-2 using the product of  
 5 Preparation EX3B (0.95 g, 1.41 mmol), trifluoroacetic acid  
 (4.0 mL), anisole (0.4 mL), and dichloromethane (20 mL) to  
 yield the desired product (Preparation 3) (0.82 g, 92%) as a  
 pale yellow solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent  
 with structure above: Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{36}\text{H}_{44}\text{N}_6\text{O}_8\text{F}_6$ ; 53.86 C,  
 10 5.53 H, 10.47 N; found 52.73 C, 5.50 H, 10.07 N; FDMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) -  
 574.

Example 2-7

## Preparation EX4A



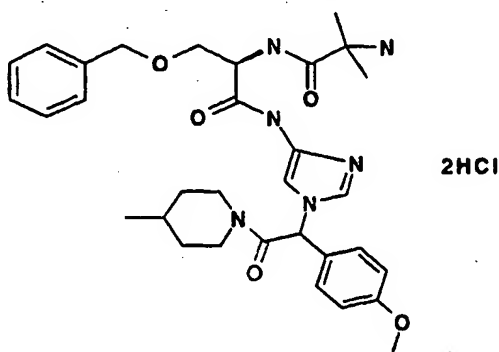
15

To a solution of the product of Preparation 5 (8.0  
 g, 13.0 mmol), stirring in dimethylformamide (150 mL) at room

-95-

temperature, was added 4-methylpiperidine (1.6 mL, 13.0 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (2.0 g, 14.3 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (3.0 g, 14.3 mmol). After 16 hours, the reaction mixture was filtered and concentrated. The resulting material was partitioned between ethyl acetate and water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined organic extracts were washed with brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to dryness. The resulting crude material was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 3% methanol/ chloroform) to yield 7.65 g (85%) of the above-identified product as a yellow foam:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 0.2 (m, 1H), 0.50 (d,  $J = 6.0$  Hz, 1.5 H), 0.80 (d,  $J = 6.0$  Hz, 1.5 H), 1.05 (m, 1H), 1.22-1.45 (m, 15H), 1.50-1.65 (m, 4H), 2.65 (m, 1H), 3.00 (m, 1H), 3.55 (m, 1H), 3.65 (m, 1H), 3.75 (s, 3H), 4.37 (m, 1H), 4.40-4.50 (m, 2H), 4.60 (m, 1H), 6.62 (d,  $J = 13$  Hz, 1H), 6.98 (t,  $J = 9.4$  Hz, 2H), 7.10-7.45 (m, 11H), 10.15 (br s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 691.3 ( $M+1$ ); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{50}\text{N}_6\text{O}_7 \cdot 0.6\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 63.34; H, 7.35; N, 11.98. Found: C, 63.25; H, 7.03; 11.87.

Compounds 7 and 8



To a solution of the product of Preparation EX4A (7.26 g, 10.5 mmol), stirring in dichloromethane (25 mL) at room temperature, was added trifluoroacetic acid (10 mL). After

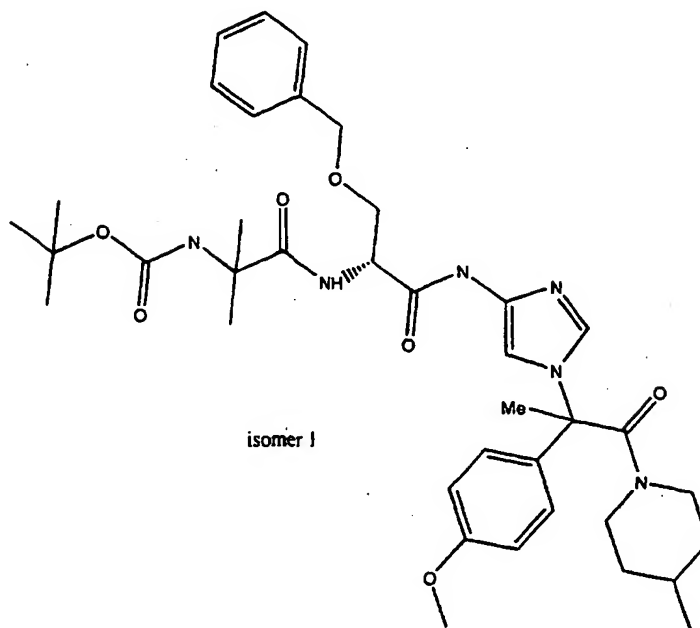
4 hours, the reaction mixture was poured into a saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate extracted with chloroform. The combined organic extracts were washed with brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to yield 6.12 g (99%) of the free base as a tan foam. The diastereomeric material (3.0 g) was chromatographed on an 8 x 15 cm Prochrom column packed with Kromasil CHI-DMP chiral phase using an eluent mixture of 3A alcohol (13% by v), dimethylethylamine (0.2% by v) in heptane at a flow rate of 250 mL/min to provide the individual diastereomers in pure form:

Compound 7 Isomer: To a solution of the purified isomer in ethyl acetate was added a saturated solution of hydrochloric acid in diethyl ether. The resulting slurry was concentrated to dryness to yield 1.1 g (37%) of the desired product as a white solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (d, DMSO) 0.50 (d,  $J = 6.0$  Hz, 1.5 H), 0.80 (d,  $J = 6.0$  Hz, 1.5 H), 1.16 (m, 1H), 1.35 (m, 1H), 1.50-1.70 (m, 8H), 2.60-2.70 (m, 2H), 3.03 (m, 1H), 3.65-3.80 (m, 6H), 4.40 (m, 1H), 4.53 (s, 2H), 4.75 (m, 1H), 6.90-7.08 (m, 3H), 7.25-7.45 (m, 9H), 8.20-8.40 (m, 4H), 8.61 (d,  $J = 7.5$  Hz, 1H), 11.15 (br s, 1H);  $t_R = 7.93$  min; MS (ion spray) 591.6 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{42}\text{N}_6\text{O}_5 \cdot 2\text{HCl}$ : C, 57.92; H, 6.69; N, 12.66. Found: C, 57.72; H, 6.47; N, 12.42.

Compound 8 Isomer: To a solution of the purified isomer in ethyl acetate was added a saturated solution of hydrochloric acid in diethyl ether. The resulting slurry was concentrated to yield 0.98 g (33%) of the desired product as a white solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (d, DMSO) 0.50 (d,  $J = 6.0$  Hz, 1.5 H), 0.80 (d,  $J = 6.0$  Hz, 1.5 H), 1.16 (m, 1H), 1.35 (m, 1H), 1.50-1.70 (m, 8H), 2.60-2.70 (m, 2H), 3.03 (m, 1H), 3.65-3.80 (m, 6H), 4.40 (m, 1H), 4.53 (s, 2H), 4.75 (m, 1H), 6.90-7.08 (m, 3H), 7.25-7.45 (m, 9H), 8.20-8.40 (m, 4H), 8.61 (d,  $J = 7.5$  Hz, 1H), 11.15 (br s, 1H);  $t_R = 11.78$  min;

MS (ion spray) 591.6 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $C_{32}H_{42}N_6O_5 \cdot 2.2HCl$ : C, 57.29; H, 6.64; N, 12.53. Found: C, 57.23; H, 6.29; N, 12.57.

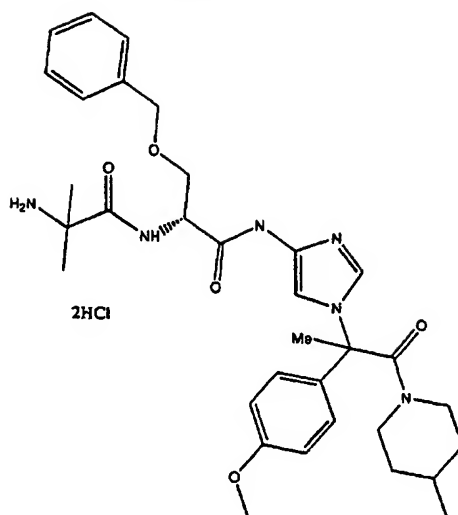
5

Example 2-8Preparation EX5A

10 Preparation EX5A was prepared as in Preparation EX2B  
using the product of Preparation 14 (1.32 g, 3.55 mmol) and  
5% palladium on carbon (1.4 g, catalytic, 50 mL THF) to give  
the crude amine. The resulting filtrate was reacted with  
HOBT (0.48 g, 3.55 mmol), the product of Preparation 1 (1.35  
15 g, 3.55 mmol), and DCC (0.81 g, 3.91 mmol) to yield the  
above-identified product (0.82 g, 33% yield), as follows, as  
a light yellow foam:  $^1H$  NMR (300 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ ) - consistent  
with the structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $C_{38}H_{52}N_6O_7$ ; 64.75 C,  
7.44 H, 11.92 N; found 66.19 C, 7.17 H, 12.10 N; ISMS (M+) -  
20 705.

-98-

Compound 8



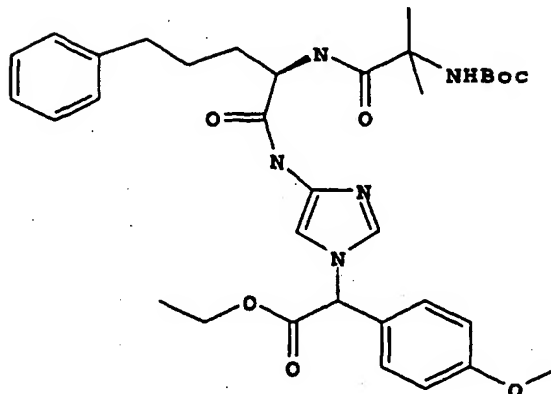
A solution of the product of Preparation EX5A (0.82g, 1.16 mmol), in dichloromethane (20 mL), was stirred under nitrogen with anisole (0.4 mL) and trifluoroacetic acid at ambient temperature for 3 hours. The mixture was quenched with saturated sodium bicarbonate and stirred for 10 minutes at ambient temperature. Dichloromethane was added and the mixture was washed with bicarbonate and brine. The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate, concentrated in vacuo, and redissolved in 2 mL ethyl acetate. Diethyl ether (saturated HCl(g), 5 mL) was added and the mixture was then stirred for 12 minutes. The mixture was filtered to yield the above-identified product (0.71 g, 90%) as a pale yellow solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{33}\text{H}_{46}\text{N}_6\text{O}_5\text{Cl}_2$ ; 58.49 C, 6.84 H, 12.40 N; found 55.40 C, 6.48 H, 11.80 N; ISMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 605.



-99-

Example 2-9

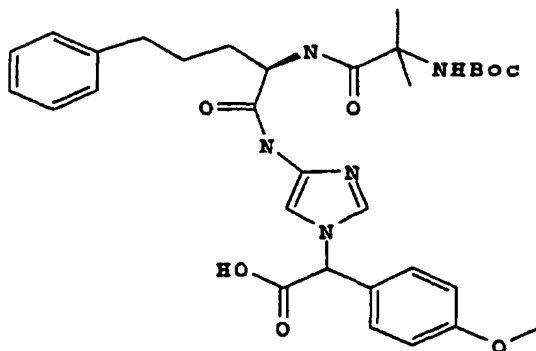
## Preparation EX6A



5 To a suspension of 5% palladium on carbon (1.75 g) and tetrahydrofuran (120 mL) was added the product of Preparation 4 (3.51 g, 11.5 mmol). The reaction mixture was placed under a hydrogen atmosphere (40 mm Hg) on a Parr apparatus for 2 hours then filtered through celite. The  
10 filtrate was subsequently added to a solution of the product of Preparation 2 (4.33 g, 11.5 mmol), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (2.60 g, 12.6 mmol) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (1.72 g, 12.6 mmol) stirring in tetrahydrofuran (50 mL) at 0 °C. After 16 hours at room  
15 temperature, the reaction mixture was concentrated. The resulting residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate, filtered and the resulting filtrate concentrated. The crude residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 90 % ethyl acetate/hexanes to 10 % methanol/ethyl acetate gradient) to  
20 give 4.5 g (62 %) the desired product (Preparation EX6A), as follows, as a light orange foam: <sup>1</sup>H NMR consistent with structure; MS (IS) m/e 636 (M + 1). Anal. (C<sub>34</sub>H<sub>45</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>7</sub>) C, H, N:

-100-

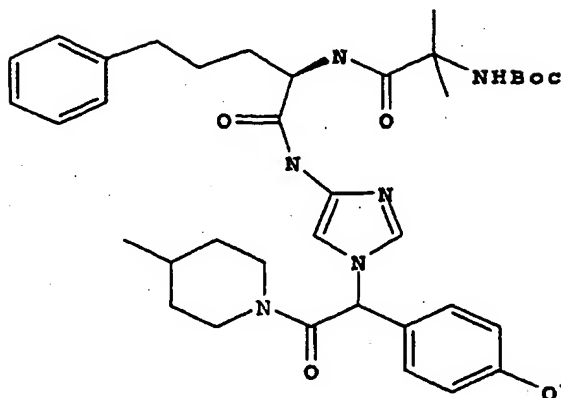
## Preparation EX6B



To a solution of the product of Preparation EX6A (1.01  
5 g, 1.59 mmol), stirring in tetrahydrofuran (30 mL) and water  
(15 mL) at room temperature, was added lithium hydroxide  
(0.26 g, 6.30 mmol). After 25 minutes, the reaction mixture  
was concentrated and the resulting residue was diluted with  
water and extracted with diethyl ether. The aqueous  
10 extracts were acidified to pH 2-3 with 1N hydrochloric acid  
and then extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined organic  
extracts were washed with brine, dried with sodium sulfate  
and concentrated to provide 0.96 g (99 %) of the desired  
compound (Preparation EX6B), as follows, as a light tan foam  
15 that was used without further purification:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR  
consistent with structure; MS (IS)  $m/e$  608 ( $M + 1$ ). Anal.  
( $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{41}\text{N}_5\text{O}_7$ ) C: calc'd, 63.25; found, 62.68, H, N.

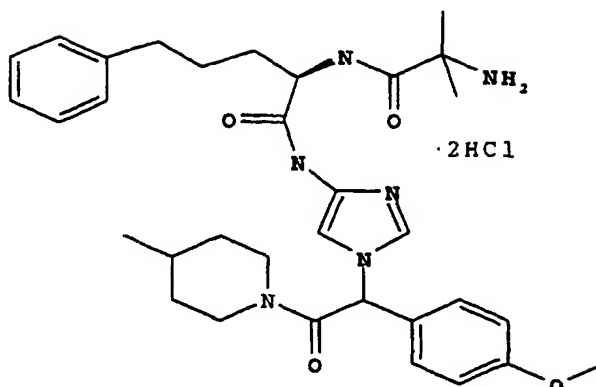
-101-

## Preparation EX6C



To a solution of the product of Preparation EX6B (0.93 g, 1.53 mmol), stirring in dichloromethane (25 mL) at room temperature, was added N-methylmorpholine (0.20 mL, 1.83 mmol) and 2-chloro-(4,6)-dimethoxy-1,3,5-triazine (0.35 g, 1.99 mmol). After 1 hour, 4-methylpiperidine (0.20 mL, 1.68 mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was stirred room temperature for 2 hours at which time 2-chloro-(4,6)-  
10 dimethoxy-1,3,5-triazine (0.10 g, 0.70 mmol) was added. After 1 hour, the reaction mixture was concentrated and the resulting residue purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, ethyl acetate/methanol gradient) to give the desired compound (Preparation EX6C), as follows, as a light yellow  
15 solid foam (0.875 g, 83%):  $^1\text{H}$  NMR consistent with structure; MS (IS)  $m/e$  689 ( $M + 1$ ). Anal. ( $\text{C}_{38}\text{H}_{52}\text{N}_6\text{O}_6$ ) C, H, N.

-102-

Compound 10

To a solution of the product of Preparation EX6C (0.77  
5 g, 1.12 mmol) and anisole (0.13 mL, 1.13 mmol) stirring in  
dichloromethane (20 mL) at 0 °C, was added trifluoroacetic  
acid. After 3-4 hours, the reaction mixture was warmed to  
room temperature and then quenched by pouring over cold  
saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The organic layer was  
10 collected and the aqueous layer was extracted twice with  
dichloromethane. The combined organic extracts were washed  
with aqueous sodium bicarbonate, water, brine, then dried  
over sodium sulfate and concentrated. The resulting  
material was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel,  
15 5% methanol/ 95% ethyl acetate gradient to 5%  
triethylamine/10% methanol/ 85% ethyl acetate) to provide  
0.63 g (95 %) of the desired mixture of diastereomers as an  
off-white solid foam. The mixture (190 mg) was resolved by  
chiral HPLC [Kromasil packing material, 15% 3A alcohol/ 85%  
20 heptane (w/ 0.2% dimethylamine)] to provide the two desired  
diastereomers. To a solution of diastereomer 2 (65 mg)  
(retention time = 9.00 min) stirring in ethyl acetate (5 mL)  
was added saturated solution of hydrochloric acid in diethyl  
ether. The resulting white precipitate was collected by  
25 vacuum filtration and rinsed with diethyl ether to provide  
the desired compound (60 mg) as a white amorphous solid:  $^1\text{H}$

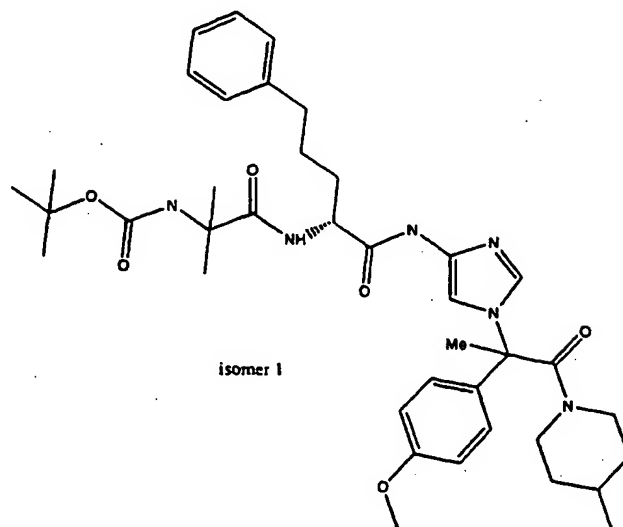
-103-

NMR consistent with structure; MS (IS)  $m/e$  589 ( $M + 1$ ).

Anal. ( $C_{33}H_{44}N_6O_4 \cdot 2HCl$ ) C, H, N.

Example 2-10

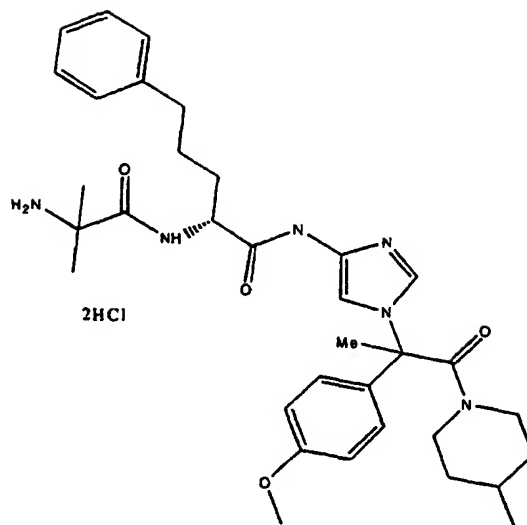
Preparation EX7A



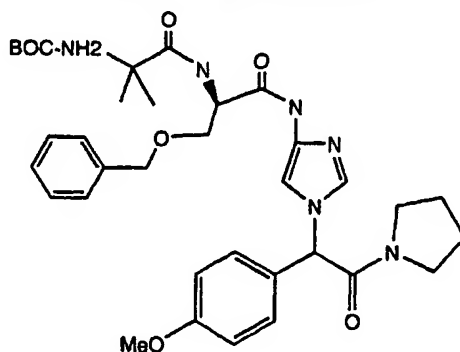
5

Prepared as in Preparation EX2B using the product of Preparation 14 (0.92 g, 2.47 mmol) and 5% palladium on carbon (1.00 g, catalytic, 30 mL THF) to give the crude amine. The resulting filtrate was reacted with HOBT (0.35 g, 2.47 mmol), the product of Preparation 2 (0.94 g, 2.47 mmol), and DCC (0.56 g, 2.72 mmol) to yield the desired product (Preparation EX7A), as follows, (0.92 g, 53% yield) as a light yellow foam:  $^1H$  NMR (300 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $C_{39}H_{54}N_6O_6$ ; 66.64 C, 7.74 H, 11.96 N; found 66.65 C, 7.65 H, 12.02 N; ISMS ( $M^+$ ) - 702.

-104-

Compound 11

Prepared as in Example 2-8 using the product of  
 5 Preparation EX7A (0.26 g, 0.37 mmol), trifluoroacetic acid  
 (4.0 mL), anisole (0.4 mL), and dichloromethane (20 mL) to  
 yield the desired product (Example 7) (0.19 g, 76%) as a  
 pale yellow solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent  
 with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{34}\text{H}_{48}\text{N}_6\text{O}_4\text{Cl}_2$ ; 60.44 C, 7.16  
 10 H, 12.44 N; found 60.08 C, 7.03 H, 12.06 N; ISMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 603.

Example 2-11Preparation EX8A

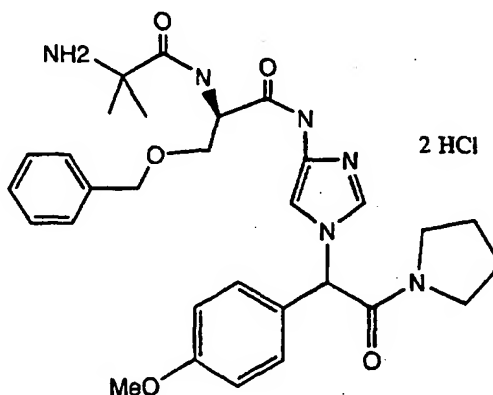
15

To a solution of the product of Preparation 5 (10.0 g,  
 16.4 mmol), stirring in tetrahydrofuran (150 mL) at room

-105-

temperature was added 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (2.22 g, 16.4 mmol) and 1,3- dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (3.38 g, 16.4 mmol). After 15 minutes, pyrrolidine (1.37 mL, 16.4 mmol) was added. After 16 hours, the reaction mixture was filtered and concentrated. The resulting crude material was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 5% methanol/dichloromethane) to yield 7.05 g (65%) of the desired product (Preparation EX8A), as follows, as a yellow foam: <sup>1</sup>H-NMR consistent with product; MS (ion spray) 663 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for C<sub>35</sub>H<sub>46</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>7</sub>: C, 63.43; H, 7.00; N, 12.68. (Found) C, 62.69; H, 6.87; N, 12.91.

Compounds 12 and 13



15

To the product of Preparation EX8A (7.0 g, 10.6 mmol) was added a saturated solution of HCl(g)/acetic acid (100 mL). After 4 hours, the reaction mixture was concentrated then partitioned between ethyl acetate and saturated sodium bicarbonate. The organic layer was removed, dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated to yield 5.59 g (94%) of the free base as a light yellow foam. The diastereomeric material (3.45 g) was chromatographed on an 8 x 15 cm Prochrom column packed with Kromsil CHI-DIMETHYLFORMAMIDE chiral phase using an eluent mixture of 3A alcohol and dimethylethylamine in heptane to provide the individual

-106-

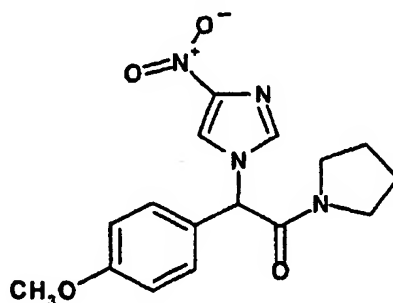
diastereomers in pure form:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR consistent with product; MS (ion spray) 563 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{38}\text{N}_6\text{O}_5$ : C, 64.04; H, 6.81; N, 14.94. (Found) C, 63.98; H, 6.82; N, 14.87.

5        **Compound 12 (Isomer 1)** To a solution of the purified isomer in ethyl acetate was added a saturated solution of hydrochloric acid in ethyl acetate. The resulting slurry was concentrated to dryness to yield 1.50 g (39%) of the desired product as an off-white solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR consistent  
10 with product; MS (ion spray) 563 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{38}\text{N}_6\text{O}_5 \times 2 \text{ HCl}$ : C, 56.69; H, 6.34; N, 13.22. (Found) C, 55.81; H, 6.40; N, 12.68.

**Compound 13 (Isomer 2)** To a solution of the purified isomer in ethyl acetate was added a saturated solution of  
15 hydrochloric acid in ethyl acetate. The resulting slurry was concentrated to dryness to yield 1.43 g (38%) of the desired product as an off-white solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR consistent with structure; MS (ion spray) 563 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{38}\text{N}_6\text{O}_5 \times 2 \text{ HCl}$ : C, 56.69; H, 6.34; N, 13.22. (Found) C,  
20 55.71; H, 6.38; N, 12.74.

#### Example 2-12

##### Preparation EX9A



25

To a solution of Preparation 4 (3.00 g, 9.84 mmol), stirring in tetrahydrofuran (10 mL) and ethanol (5 mL), was added to sodium hydroxide (20 mL of a 5 N aqueous solution).

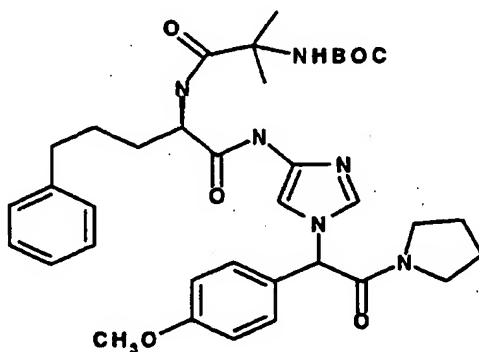


-107-

The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature until hydrolysis was complete and subsequently acidified to pH 2.0 with aqueous hydrochloric acid. The reaction mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated. The resulting carboxylic acid was combined with pyrrolidine (0.710 g, 10 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate (1.35 g, 10 mmol) and 1,3-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (2.06 g, 10.0 mmol) stirring in tetrahydrofuran (100 mL) at room temperature. After 18 hours, the mixture was concentrated, and the residue was then slurried in ethyl acetate then filtered and concentrated. Purification was by flash chromatography (silica gel, chloroform/methanol) provided afford 2.74 g (84%) of the desired product (Preparation EX9A) as follows:

MS: (M+H)<sup>+</sup> 331.2; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 8.19 (d, 1H, J = 1.51 Hz), 7.80 (d, 1H, J = 1.51 Hz), 7.45 (d, 2H, J = 8.67 Hz), 7.02 (d, 2H, J = 8.67 Hz), 6.58 (s, 1H), 3.77 (s, 3H), 3.75-3.60 (m, 1H), 3.45-3.30 (m, 2H), 2.90-2.75 (m, 1H), 1.95-1.60 (m, 4H); Anal. Calc'd. for C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>18</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>4</sub>: C, 58.18; H, 5.49; N, 16.96. Found: C, 58.44; H, 5.45; N, 16.87.

## Preparation EX9B

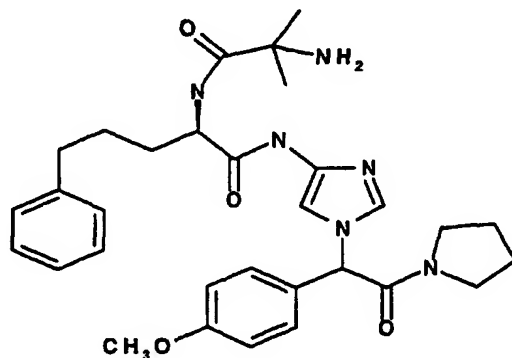


The product of Preparation EX9A (1.13 g, 3.42 mmol) was added to a mixture of 10% palladium/carbon (0.65 g) and palladium/black (0.15 g) in tetrahydrofuran (40 mL). The

-108-

mixture was shaken under hydrogen (38 psi) in a Parr apparatus. After reduction was complete, the reaction mixture was filtered through celite and then filtrate immediately combined with 1,3-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (0.71 g, 3.45mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.46 g, 3.40 mmol), the product of Preparation 2 (1.30 g, 3.44 mmol) and additional tetrahydrofuran (60 mL). After stirring overnight at ambient temperature, the mixture was concentrated and the residue slurried in ethyl acetate then filtered. The filtrate was concentrated and the residue purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, chloroform/methanol) which afforded 1.50g (66%) of the desired product (Preparation EX9B), as follows, which was used without further purification.

15

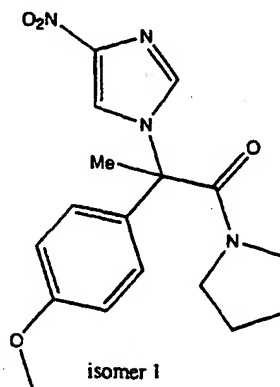
Compound 14

To a solution of the product of Preparation EX9B (1.45 g, 2.20 mmol), in dichloromethane (30 mL), was added trifluoroacetic acid (10 mL). After 2 hours, the mixture was concentrated and the residue treated with excess aqueous sodium bicarbonate and extracted. The combined organic extracts were concentrated and the resulting residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, chloroform/methanol) to provide 0.68 g of the desired product (Example 9) as a yellow solid: MS: (M+H)<sup>+</sup> 561.3. <sup>1</sup>H

-109-

NMR was consistent with product (Example 9). Anal. Calc'd. for  $C_{31}H_{40}N_6O_4 \cdot 0.2 CHCl_3$ : C, 64.11; H, 6.93; N, 14.38. Found: C, 64.19; H, 7.19; N, 14.50. The isomeric mixture (1.72 g) was separated as previously described in Example 2-9 to provide 0.64 g of isomer 1 ( $t_R = 7.50$  min) and 0.49 g of isomer 2 ( $t_R = 10.15$  min). Isomer 2 (486 mg, 0.87 mmol) was dissolved in a minimal amount of ethyl acetate and treated with an excess of saturated hydrochloric acid in ethyl acetate. Concentration and subsequent evaporation from diethyl ether allowed for recovery of 580 mg of an off-white solid: MS:  $(M+H)^+$  561.3, 562.4.  $^1H$  NMR was consistent with product. Anal. Calc'd. for  $C_{31}H_{40}N_6O_4 \cdot 3.0 HCl$ : C, 55.57; H, 6.47; N, 12.54. Found: C, 56.40; H, 6.43; N, 12.20.

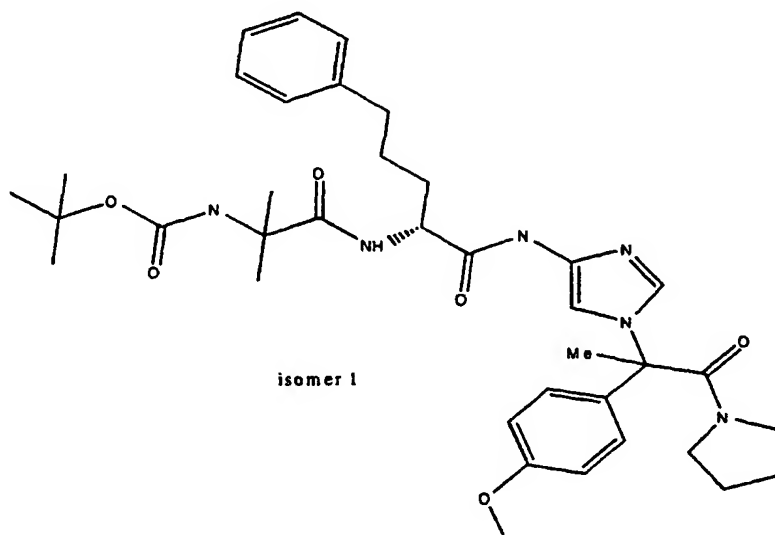
15

**Example 2-13****Preparation EX10A**

Prepared as in Preparation EX2A using the product of Preparation 7, diastereomer 1 (1.25 g, 2.78 mmol) in THF (50 mL) and lithium hydroxide (0.14 g, 3.33 mmol) in water (25 mL) to give the crude acid. The resulting crude solid was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (50 mL) and reacted with catalytic DMF (0.1 mL) and excess oxalyl chloride (5 g) to give the crude acid chloride. The resulting crude foam was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (50 mL) and

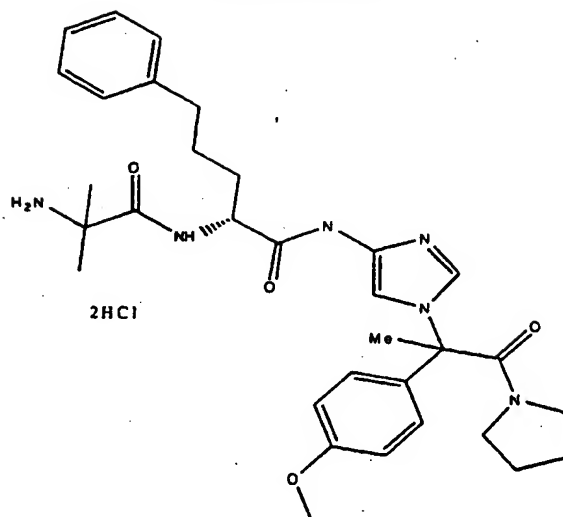
-110-

reacted with 4-Dimethylaminopyridine (catalytic, 10 mg) and pyrrolidine (0.24 mL, 2.89 mmol) to yield the desired product (Preparation EX10A), as follows, (0.78 g, 86% yield) as a colorless foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent  
5 with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{20}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4$ ; 59.59 C, 5.85 H, 16.27 N; found 59.59 C, 5.96 H, 16.19 N; ISMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 345.



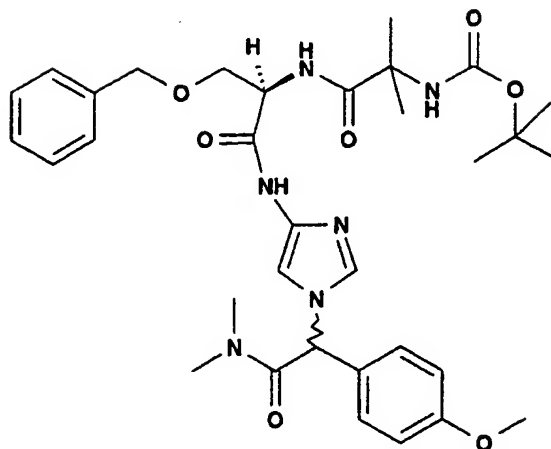
10 Prepared as in Preparation EX2B using the product of Preparation EX10A (0.77 g, 2.24 mmol) and 5% palladium on carbon (0.80 g, catalytic, 25 mL THF) to give the crude amine. The resulting filtrate was reacted with HOBT (0.30 g, 2.46 mmol), the product of Preparation 2 (0.85 g, 2.24  
15 mmol), and DCC (0.51 g, 2.46 mmol) to yield the desired product (Preparation EX10B), as follows, (0.70 g, 46% yield) as a light yellow foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{50}\text{N}_6\text{O}_6$ ; 65.85 C, 7.47 H, 12.45 N; found 65.83 C, 7.27 H, 12.38 N; ISMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 675.

-111-

Compound 15

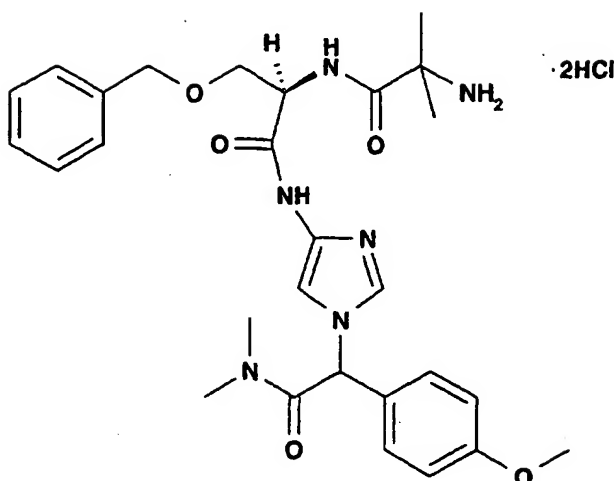
A solution of the product of Preparation EX10B (0.69 g, 1.02 mmol) in dichloromethane (10 mL) was stirred under nitrogen with anisole (0.2 mL) and trifluoroacetic acid (4.0 mL) at ambient temperature for 3 hours. The mixture was quenched with saturated sodium bicarbonate and stirred 10 minutes at ambient temperature. Dichloromethane was added and the mixture was washed with bicarbonate and brine. The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate, concentrated in vacuo, and redissolved in 2 mL ethyl acetate. Diethyl ether (saturated HCl (g), 5 mL) was added and the mixture stirred 10 minutes. The mixture was filtered to yield the desired product (Example 10) (0.57 g, 86% yield) as a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for C<sub>32</sub>H<sub>42</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>4</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>; 59.35 C, 6.85 H, 12.98 N; found 58.74 C, 6.77 H, 12.85 N; ISMS (M<sup>+</sup>) - 575.

-112-

Example 2-14Preparation 473

To a solution of the product of Preparation 5 (3.60 g, 5.90 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (60 mL) at 0°C was added N-methylmorpholine (0.78 mL, 7.08 mmol) and 2-chloro-4,6-dimethoxy-1,3,5-triazine (1.35 g, 7.67 mmol). This mixture stirred for 1 h, warming to room temperature, at which time a 2M solution of N,N-dimethylamine (3.30 mL, 6.49 mmol) was added. The reaction stirred for 2 h at room temperature, then more 2-chloro-4,6-dimethoxy-1,3,5-triazine (0.30 g) was added. The reaction was stirred for another 1 h and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate, the solids were filtered away and the filtrate was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, ethyl acetate - 10% methanol/ethyl acetate) to give the desired product as a light yellow solid foam (2.93 g, 78%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR consistent with structure; MS (IS) m/e 637 (M + 1); Anal. Calc'd for C<sub>33</sub>H<sub>44</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>7</sub>: C, 62.25; H, 6.97; N, 13.20. Found: C, 61.02; H, 6.67; N, 13.72.

-113-

Compound 16

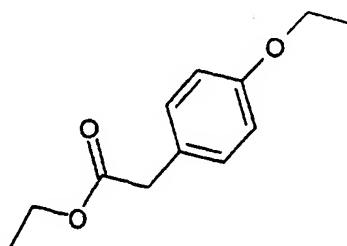
To a stirring solution of the product of Preparation 473 (3.60 g, 5.65 mmol) and anisole (0.65 mL, 5.93 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (130 mL) at 0 °C was added trifluoroacetic acid (13 mL) via syringe. The reaction was stirred for 4 hours warming to room temperature and then was quenched by pouring over ice-cooled saturated sodium bicarbonate. The organic layer was collected and the aqueous layer was extracted twice with dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were washed with sodium bicarbonate, water and brine, then dried (sodium sulfate) and evaporated in vacuo to give an light yellow solid foam. The impure foam was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 5% methanol/ethyl acetate - 5% triethylamine/10% methanol/ethyl acetate) to provide the desired product as an off-white solid foam (2.20 g, 73%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR consistent with structure; MS (IS) m/e 537 (M + 1); Anal. Calc'd for C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>36</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>5</sub>: C, 62.67; H, 6.76; N, 15.66. Found: C, 62.53; H, 6.62; N, 15.57.

Diastereomeric separation: the product was resolved by HPLC [Kromasil packing material, 15% 3A alcohol/ 85% heptane (w/ 0.2% DMEA)] to provide two diastereomers. The second diastereomer (0.45 g) (retention time = 10.70 min) was

-114-

dissolved in ethyl acetate (10 mL) and then a saturated solution of hydrochloric acid in diethyl ether (2 mL) was added, with stirring. The white precipitate was collected by vacuum filtration and rinsed with diethyl ether. Vacuum drying provided Example 254 (0.40 g) as a white amorphous solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR consistent with structure; MS (IS)  $m/e$  537 ( $M + 1$ ); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{36}\text{N}_6\text{O}_5 \cdot 2\text{HCl}$ : C, 55.17; H, 6.28; N, 13.79. Found: C, 56.56; H, 6.38; N, 14.26.

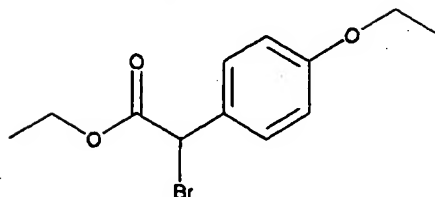
10

Example 2-15Preparation 76

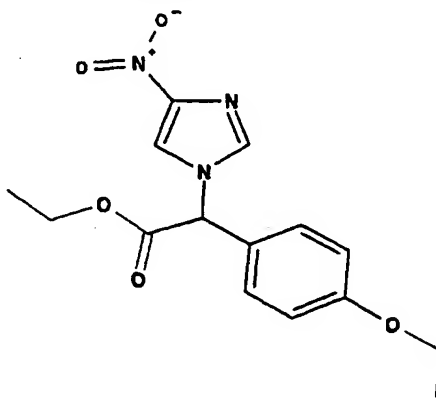
Reaction of 4-ethoxyphenylacetic acid (23.5 g, 130 mmol) and p-toluenesulfonic acid (4.0 g, 21 mmol) in absolute ethanol (150 mL), as described in Preparation 4A, gave 23.2 g (86%) of the desired product as a colorless oil:  $^1\text{H}$ -NMR (d, DMSO) 1.17 (t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 3H), 1.31 (t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 3H), 3.56 (s, 2H), 3.99 (q,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 2H), 4.05 (q,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 2H), 6.85 (d,  $J = 8.7$  Hz, 2H), 7.14 (d,  $J = 8.7$  Hz, 2H); MS (ion spray) 209 ( $M+1$ ); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{16}\text{O}_3$ : C, 69.21; H, 7.74. Found: C, 68.91; H, 7.55.



-115-

Preparation 77

To a solution of the product of Preparation 76 (53 g, 255 mmol), stirring in carbon tetrachloride (600 mL) at room temperature, was added 46.6 g (262 mmol) of N-bromosuccinimide and 3.0 g (18.3 mmol) of 2,2'-azobis(2-methylpropionitrile). The resulting reaction mixture was heated to reflux. After 3.5 h, the solution was cooled to room temperature, filtered and concentrated. The resulting oil was chromatographed on silica gel using chloroform as eluant to afford 70.9 g (97%) of the desired product as a colorless oil: <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (d, DMSO) 1.17 (t, J = 7.2 Hz, 3H), 1.25-1.35 (m, 3H), 4.00-4.10 (m, 2H), 4.13-4.25 (m, 2H), 5.86 (s, 1H), 6.92 (d, J = 8.7 Hz, 2H), 7.47 (d, J = 9.0 Hz, 2H); MS (FD) 287, 289 (M<sup>+</sup>).

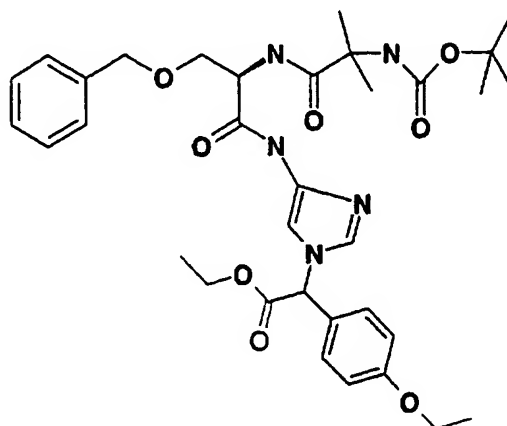
Preparation 78

Reaction of the product of Preparation 77 (11.4 g, 40 mmol), 4-nitroimidazole (4.5 g, 40 mmol) and potassium carbonate (16.6 g, 120 mmol) in dimethylformamide (100 mL) as described in Preparation 4 gave 5.47 g (43%) of the

-116-

desired product as a yellow oil:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 1.18 (t,  $J$  = 7.2 Hz, 3H), 1.29 (t,  $J$  = 7.2 Hz, 3H), 4.03 (q,  $J$  = 7.2 Hz, 2H), 4.23 (q,  $J$  = 7.2 Hz, 2H), 6.54 (s, 1H), 6.70 (d,  $J$  = 8.7 Hz, 2H), 7.42 (d,  $J$  = 8.7 Hz, 2H), 7.90 (s, 1H), 8.34 (s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 320.2 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{17}\text{N}_3\text{O}_5$ : C, 56.42; H, 5.37; N, 13.16. Found: C, 56.29; H, 5.17; N, 13.15.

### Preparation 79

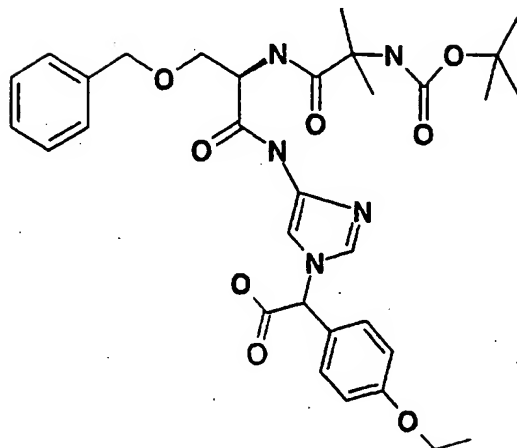


10

Reduction of the product of Preparation 78 (9.6 g, 30 mmol) with 10% palladium on carbon (7.0 g) in tetrahydrofuran (100 mL) followed by coupling with the product of Preparation 1 (11.5 g, 30 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (4.5 g, 33 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (6.8 g, 33 mmol), as described in Preparation 5A, gave 9.9 g (50%) of the desired product as a tan foam:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 1.17 (t,  $J$  = 7.2 Hz, 3H), 1.25-1.40 (m, 18H), 3.58 (m, 1H), 3.70 (m, 1H), 4.02 (q,  $J$  = 7.2 Hz, 2H), 4.20 (q,  $J$  = 7.2 Hz, 2H), 4.44 (d,  $J$  = 3.4 Hz, 2H), 4.60 (m, 1H), 6.33 (s, 1H), 6.95 (d,  $J$  = 8.7 Hz, 2H), 7.15-7.35 (m, 9H), 7.43 (m, 1H), 7.51 (m, 1H), 10.2 (br s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 652.4 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{34}\text{H}_{45}\text{N}_5\text{O}_8$ : C, 62.66; H, 6.96; N, 10.74. Found: C, 62.92; H, 7.00; N, 10.98.

25

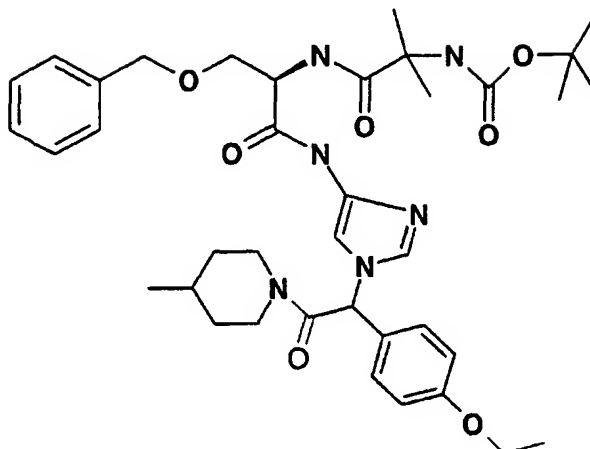
-117-

Preparation 80

Reaction of the product of Preparation 79 (9.7 g, 15.0  
5 mmol) and lithium hydroxide (0.42 g, 18.0 mmol) in dioxane  
(200 mL) and water (100 mL), as described in Preparation 5,  
gave 9.4 g (100%) of the desired product as a tan foam: <sup>1</sup>H-  
NMR (d, DMSO) 1.25-1.40 (m, 18H), 3.60 (m, 1H), 3.68 (m,  
1H), 4.02 (q, J = 7.2 Hz, 2H), 4.44 (d, J = 3.0 Hz, 2H),  
10 4.60 (m, 1H), 6.19 (m, 1H), 6.95 (d, J = 8.7 Hz, 2H), 7.28-  
7.35 (m, 9H), 7.40 (m, 1H), 7.51 (s, 1H), 10.2 (br s, 1H),  
13.5 (br s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 624.5 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd  
for C<sub>43</sub>H<sub>41</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>8</sub>: C, 61.62; H, 6.63; N, 11.23. Found: C, 61.58;  
H, 6.92; N, 10.99.

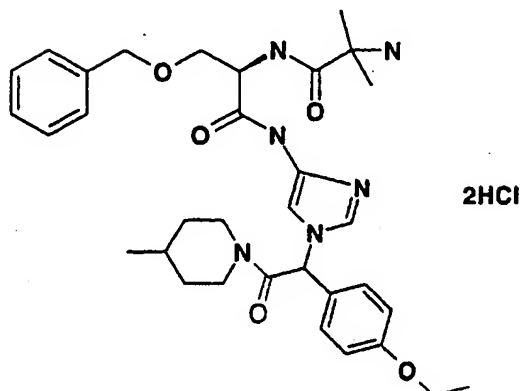
-118-

## Preparation 81



Reaction of the product of Preparation 80 (7.43 g, 12.0 mmol), 4-methylpiperidine (1.42 mL, 12.0 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (1.78 g, 13.2 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (2.72 g, 13.2 mmol) in dimethylformamide (100 mL), as described in Preparation EX4A, gave 6.4 g (76%) of the desired product as a tan foam: <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (d, DMSO) 0.74 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 1.5 H), 0.87 (d, J = 6.0 Hz, 1.5H), 1.05 (m, 1H), 1.25-1.40 (m, 18H), 1.50-1.70 (m, 3H), 2.55-2.70 (m, 2H), 3.00 (m, 1H), 3.57 (m, 1H), 3.65-3.85 (m, 2H), 4.00-4.20 (m, 2H), 4.38 (m, 1H), 4.44 (d, J = 3.4 Hz, 2H), 4.60 (m, 1H), 6.61 (d, J = 12.0 Hz, 1H), 6.95-7.00 (m, 2H), 7.15-7.20 (m, 2H), 7.20-7.45 (m, 9H), 10.15 (br s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 705.5 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for C<sub>38</sub>H<sub>52</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>7</sub>: C, 64.75; H, 7.44; N, 11.92. Found: C, 64.59; H, 7.21; N, 11.87.

-119-

Compounds 17 and 18

Reaction of the product of Preparation 81 (6.4, 9.1 mmol) and trifluoroacetic acid (10 mL) in dichloromethane (25 mL), as described in Example 2-7, gave 4.71 g (77%) of the desired mixture of diastereomers as a tan foam. Resolution of the diastereomers (2.4 g) by HPLC (Kromsil CHI-DMP chiral stationary phase, 3A alcohol/dimethylethylamine/heptane) provided 200 mg (8 %) of isomer 1 and 0.8 g (31 %) of isomer 2, both isolated as white solids after acidification with hydrochloric acid as described in Example 2-9:

**Compound 17. (Isomer 1)**  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 0.74 (d,  $J = 6.4$  Hz, 1.5H), 0.88 (d,  $J = 6.0$  Hz, 1.5H), 1.20 (m, 1H), 1.31 (t,  $J = 6.8$  Hz, 3H), 1.45-1.70 (m, 8H), 2.60-2.70 (m, 2H), 3.05 (m, 1H), 3.65-3.80 (m, 3H), 4.00-4.20 (m, 3H), 4.37 (m, 1H), 4.52 (s, 2H), 4.75 (m, 1H), 6.80 (d,  $J = 13.2$  Hz, 1H), 6.95-7.05 (m, 2H), 7.25-7.40 (m, 9H), 7.92 (br s, 1H), 8.20-8.30 (m, 3H), 8.53 (d,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 1H), 10.9 (br s, 1H);  $t_R = 9.17$  min; MS (ion spray) 605 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{33}\text{H}_{44}\text{N}_6\text{O}_5 \cdot 2\text{HCl} \cdot 0.1 \text{CHCl}_3$ : C, 58.45; H, 6.74; N, 12.74. Found: C, 58.64; H, 6.77; N, 12.36.

**Compound 18. (Isomer 2)**  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 0.74 (d,  $J = 6.4$  Hz, 1.5H), 0.88 (d,  $J = 6.0$  Hz, 1.5H), 1.20 (m, 1H), 1.31 (t,  $J = 6.8$  Hz, 3H), 1.45-1.70 (m, 8H), 2.60-2.70 (m, 2H), 3.05 (m, 1H), 3.65-3.80 (m, 3H), 4.00-4.20 (m, 3H),

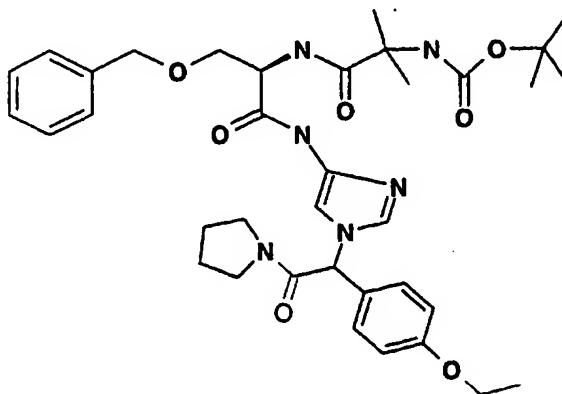
-120-

4.37 (m, 1H), 4.52 (s, 2H), 4.75 (m, 1H), 6.80 (d,  $J = 13.2$  Hz, 1H), 6.95-7.05 (m, 2H), 7.25-7.40 (m, 9H), 7.92 (br s, 1H), 8.20-8.30 (m, 3H), 8.53 (d,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 1H), 10.9 (br s, 1H);  $t_R = 12.68$  min; MS (ion spray) 605 (M+1); Anal.

- 5 Calc'd for  $C_{33}H_{44}N_6O_5 \cdot HCl$ : C, 59.35; H, 6.85; N, 12.98.  
Found: C, 59.62; H, 7.01; N, 12.71.

### Example 2-16

#### Preparation 83

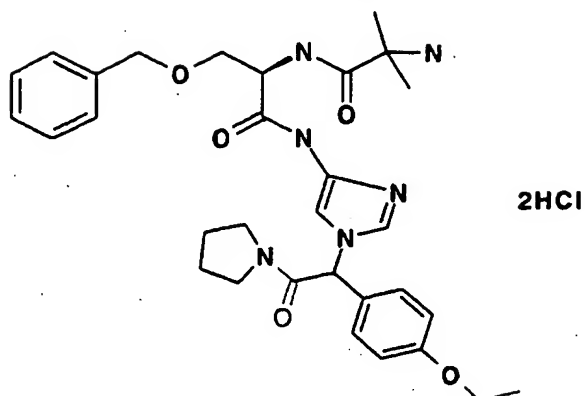


10

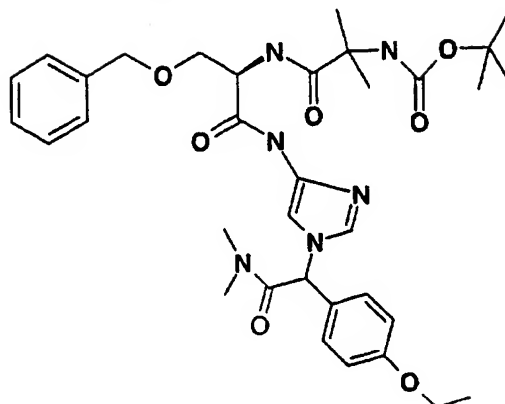
Reaction of the product of Preparation 80 (0.9 g, 1.5 mmol), pyrrolidine (0.13 mL, 1.5 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.23 g, 1.65 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (0.34 g, 1.65 mmol)

- 15 in dimethylformamide (40 mL), as described in Preparation EX4A, gave 0.7 g (74%) of the desired product as a tan foam:  $^1H$ -NMR (d, DMSO) 1.25-1.40 (m, 18H), 1.70-1.90 (m, 4H), 2.95 (m, 1H), 3.30-3.40 (m, 2H), 3.55-3.70 (m, 3H), 4.03 (q,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 2H), 4.44 (d,  $J = 3.4$  Hz, 2H), 4.57 (m, 1H), 6.34 (s, 1H), 6.97 (d,  $J = 8.7$  Hz, 2H), 7.20-7.35 (m, 9H), 7.40-7.45 (m, 2H), 10.15 (br s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 677.6 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $C_{36}H_{48}N_6O_7 \cdot 0.2H_2O$ : C, 63.55; H, 7.17; N, 12.35. Found: C, 63.32; H, 6.96; N, 12.24.
- 20

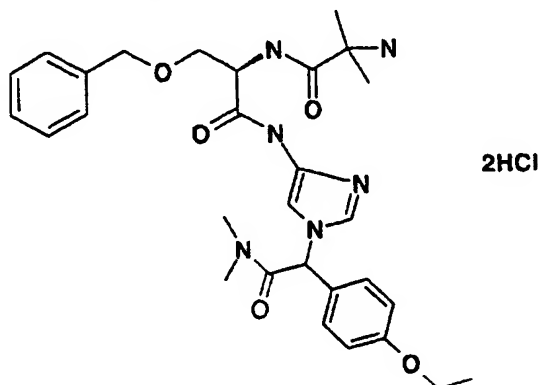
-121-

Compound 19

Reaction of the product of Preparation 83 (0.59 g, 0.9  
 5 mmol) and trifluoroacetic acid (2 mL) in dichloromethane (6  
 mL), as described in Example 2-7, gave 0.36 g (64%) of the  
 desired product as a mixture of isomers:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO)  
 1.32 (t,  $J = 6.8$  Hz, 3H), 1.45-1.60 (m, 6H), 1.65-1.90 (m,  
 4H), 2.90 (m, 1H), 3.25-3.45 (m, 2H), 3.65-3.75 (m, 3H),  
 10 4.02 (q,  $J = 6.8$  Hz, 2H), 4.45-4.55 (m, 2H), 4.70-4.80 (m,  
 1H), 6.54 (s, 1H), 6.98 (d,  $J = 8.7$  Hz, 2H), 7.20-7.40 (m,  
 9H), 8.05 (m, 1H), 8.20-8.30 (m, 3H), 8.54 (d,  $J = 7.2$  Hz,  
 1H), 10.95 (br s, 1H); MS (high res) calc'd for  $\text{C}_{31}\text{H}_{41}\text{N}_6\text{O}_5$ :  
 577.3138. Found: 577.3132. Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{31}\text{H}_{40}\text{N}_6\text{O}_5 \cdot 2\text{HCl}$ :  
 15 C, 57.32; H, 6.52; N, 12.94. Found: C, 57.46; H, 6.59; N,  
 12.91.

Example 2-17Preparation 82

Reaction of the product of Preparation 80 (0.9 g, 1.5  
5 mmol), dimethylamine hydrochloride (0.13 g, 1.5 mmol),  
triethylamine (0.23 mL, 1.65 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole  
(0.23 g, 1.65 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-  
ethylcarbodiimide (0.34 g, 1.65 mmol) in dimethylformamide  
(50 mL), as described in Preparation EX4A, gave 0.46 g (47%)  
10 of the desired product as a tan foam:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 1.25-  
1.35 (m, 18H), 2.90 (m, 6H), 3.57 (m, 1H), 3.67 (m, 1H),  
4.03 (q,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 2H), 4.43-4.47 (m, 2H), 4.57 (m, 1H),  
6.55 (m, 1H), 6.97 (d,  $J = 8.7$  Hz, 2H), 7.15-7.45 (m, 11H),  
10.16 (br s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 651.4 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd  
15 for  $\text{C}_{34}\text{H}_{46}\text{N}_6\text{O}_7$ : C, 62.75; H, 7.13; N, 12.91. Found: C, 62.55;  
H, 6.84; N, 12.84.

Compounds 20 and 21



Reaction of the product of Preparation 82 (0.44 g, 0.68 mmol) and trifluoroacetic acid (2 mL) in dichloromethane (6 mL), as described in Example 2-7, gave 0.19 g (45%) of the desired product as a tan foam. Resolution of the

5 diastereomers (90 mg, 0.14 mmol) by HPLC (Kromsil CHI-DMP chiral stationary phase, 3A alcohol/dimethylethylamine/heptane) provided 50 mg (50 %) of isomer 1 and 27 mg (27 %) of isomer 2, both isolated as white solids after acidification with hydrochloric acid as described in Example

10 2-9:

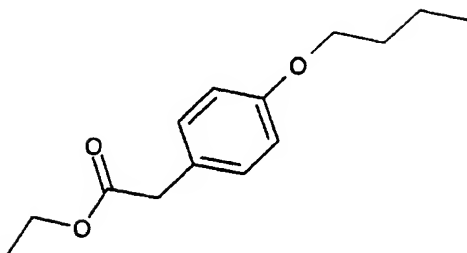
**Compound 20 (isomer 1):**  $^1\text{H}$ -NMR (d, DMSO) 1.32 (t, J = 6.8 Hz, 3H), 1.50 (s, 6H), 2.86 (s, 3H), 2.90 (s, 3H), 3.70-3.80 (m, 2H), 4.03 (q, J = 7.2 Hz, 2H), 4.52 (s, 2H), 4.75 (m, 1H), 6.76 (s, 1H), 7.00 (d, J = 8.7 Hz, 2H), 7.25-7.40

15 (m, 9H), 8.06 (m, 1H), 8.20-8.30 (m, 3H), 8.52-8.60 (m, 1H), 11.00 (br s, 1H);  $t_R$  = 7.70 min; MS (high res) calc'd for  $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{39}\text{N}_6\text{O}_5$ : 551.2982. Found: 551.2987. Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{38}\text{N}_6\text{O}_5 \cdot 2.3 \text{ HCl} \cdot 0.3 \text{ ethyl acetate}$ : C, 54.88; H, 6.51; N, 12.72. Found: C, 54.70; H, 6.49; N, 12.43.

20 **Compound 21 (isomer 2):**  $^1\text{H}$ -NMR (d, DMSO) 1.32 (t, J = 6.8 Hz, 3H), 1.50 (s, 6H), 2.86 (s, 3H), 2.90 (s, 3H), 3.70-3.80 (m, 2H), 4.03 (q, J = 7.2 Hz, 2H), 4.52 (s, 2H), 4.75 (m, 1H), 6.76 (s, 1H), 7.00 (d, J = 8.7 Hz, 2H), 7.25-7.40 (m, 9H), 8.06 (m, 1H), 8.20-8.30 (m, 3H), 8.52-8.60 (m, 1H),

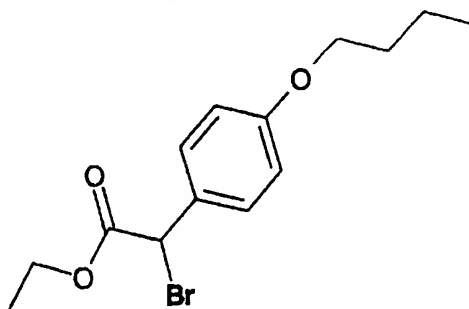
25 11.00 (br s, 1H);  $t_R$  = 9.09 min; MS (high res) calc'd for  $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{39}\text{N}_6\text{O}_5$ : 551.2982. Found: 551.2976. Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{38}\text{N}_6\text{O}_5 \cdot 2 \text{ HCl} \cdot 0.3 \text{ ethyl acetate}$ : C, 55.18; H, 6.53; N, 12.79. Found: C, 55.01; H, 6.33; N, 12.54.

-124-

Example 2-18Preparation 84

5           Reaction of 4-butyloxyphenylacetic acid (10.0 g, 48 mmol) and p-toluenesulfonic acid (2.5 g, 13 mmol) in absolute ethanol (100 mL), as described in Preparation 1, gave 11.04 g (98%) of the desired product as a colorless oil: <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (d, DMSO) 0.94 (t, J = 7.4 Hz, 3H), 1.18 (t, J = 7.0 Hz, 3H), 1.40-1.50 (m, 2H), 1.60-1.80 (m, 2H), 3.57 (s, 2H), 3.93 (q, J = 6.5 Hz, 2H), 4.08 (q, J = 7.3 Hz, 2H), 6.86 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 2H), 7.15 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 2H); MS (ion spray) 237 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for C<sub>14</sub>H<sub>20</sub>O<sub>3</sub>: C, 71.16; H, 8.53. Found: C, 71.33; H, 8.55.

15

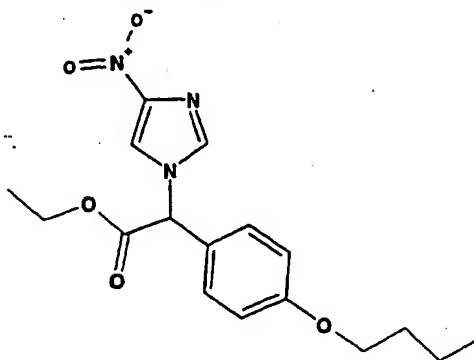
Preparation 85

20           To a solution of the product of Preparation 84, 6.0 g (25 mmol) in 100 mL of carbon tetrachloride was added 4.7 g (25.8 mmol) of N-bromosuccinimide and 0.6 g of 2,2'-azobis(2-methylpropionitrile). The reaction mixture was heated to reflux. After 3.5 hours, the mixture was cooled

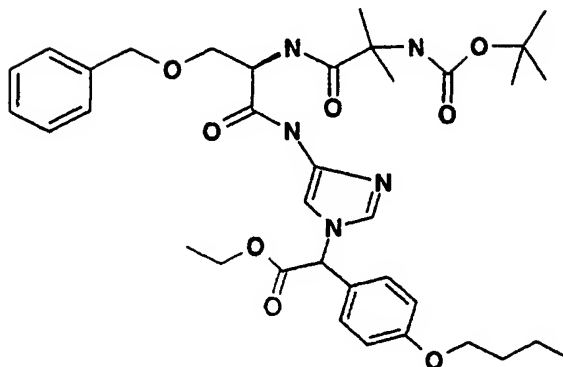
-125-

to room temperature, filtered and concentrated. The resulting oil was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 3% methanol/chloroform) to provide 6.9 g (88%) of the desired product as a colorless oil:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 0.93 (t,  $J = 7.35$  Hz, 3H), 1.20 (t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 3H), 1.40-1.50 (m, 2H), 1.60-1.80 (m, 2H), 3.95-4.05 (m, 2H), 4.10-4.15 (m, 2H), 5.87 (s, 1H), 6.93 (d,  $J = 8.7$  Hz, 2H), 7.45 (d,  $J = 8.7$  Hz, 2H); MS (FD) 314, 316 ( $M^+$ ); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{19}\text{BrO}_3 \cdot 0.5\text{CHCl}_3$ : C, 52.54; H, 5.98. Found: C, 52.35; H, 5.84.

#### Preparation 86

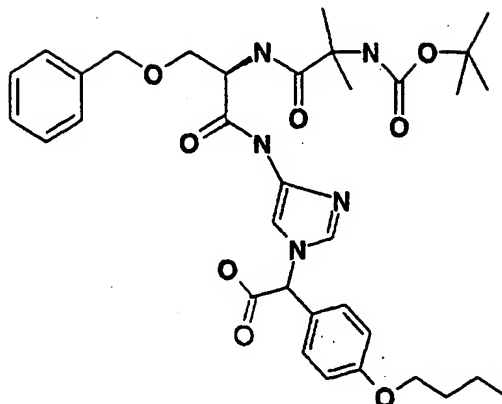


Reaction of the product of Preparation 85 (5.82 g, 19.0 mmol), 4-nitroimidazole (2.1 g, 19.0 mmol) and potassium carbonate (8.0 g, 57 mmol) in dimethylformamide (150 mL), as described in Preparation 4, gave 3.5 g (53%) of the desired product as a yellow oil:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 0.93 (t,  $J = 7.3$  Hz, 3H), 1.19 (t,  $J = 7.0$  Hz, 3H), 1.35-1.50 (m, 2H), 1.60-1.80 (m, 2H), 3.92-4.06 (m, 2H), 4.20-4.30 (m, 2H), 6.56 (s, 1H), 6.99 (d,  $J = 8.6$  Hz, 2H), 7.44 (d,  $J = 8.6$  Hz, 2H), 7.92 (s, 1H), 8.37 (s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 348.3 ( $M+1$ ); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{21}\text{N}_3\text{O}_5$ : C, 58.78; H, 6.09; N, 12.10. Found: C, 59.08; H, 6.21; N, 12.19.

Preparation 87

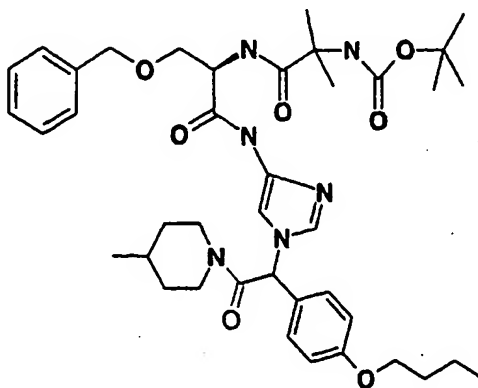
Reduction of the product of Preparation 86 (1.5 g, 4.3  
5 mmol) with 10% palladium on carbon (0.8g) in tetrahydrofuran  
(40 mL) followed by coupling with the product of Preparation  
1 (1.64 g, 4.3 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.7 g, 4.7  
mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide  
(1.04 g, 4.7 mmol), as described in Preparation 5A, gave 1.1  
10 g (38%) of the desired product as a tan foam:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d,  
DMSO) 0.92 (t,  $J = 7.5$  Hz, 3H), 1.18 (t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 3H),  
1.25-1.40 (m, 15H), 1.40-1.50 (m, 2H), 1.60-1.75 (m, 2H),  
3.60 (m, 1H), 3.70 (m, 1H), 3.95-4.00 (m, 2H), 4.20-4.25 (m,  
2H), 4.45-4.48 (m, 2H), 4.57 (m, 1H), 6.35 (s, 1H), 6.97 (t,  
15  $J = 9.0$  Hz, 2H), 7.15-7.35 (m, 9H), 7.40 (m, 1H), 7.50 (s,  
1H), 10.20 (br s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 680.5 (M+1); Anal.  
Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{36}\text{H}_{49}\text{N}_5\text{O}_8$ : C, 63.61; H, 7.27; N, 10.30. Found: C,  
63.53; H, 6.99; N, 10.54.

-127-

Preparation 88

Reaction of the product of Preparation 87 (1.1 g, 1.6 mmol) and lithium hydroxide (0.5 g, 1.92 mmol) in dioxane  
 5 (50 mL) and water (25 mL), as described in Preparation 5, gave 1.04 g (100%) of the desired product as a tan foam:  $^1\text{H}$ -NMR (d, DMSO) 0.95 (t,  $J = 7.5$  Hz, 3H), 1.25-1.35 (m, 15H), 1.35-1.50 (m, 2H), 1.65-1.75 (m, 2H), 3.57 (m, 1H), 3.65 (m, 1H), 3.95 (t,  $J = 6.4$  Hz, 2H), 4.57 (m, 1H), 6.19 (d,  $J =$   
 10 1.5 Hz, 2H), 6.20 (s, 1H), 6.96 (d,  $J = 8.7$  Hz, 2H), 7.10-7.35 (m, 9H), 7.40 (m, 1H), 7.50 (s, 1H), 10.20 (br s, 1H), 13.45 (br s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 652.5 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{45}\text{N}_5\text{O}_8$ : C, 62.66; H, 6.96; N, 10.75. Found: C, 62.45; H, 7.07; N, 10.72.

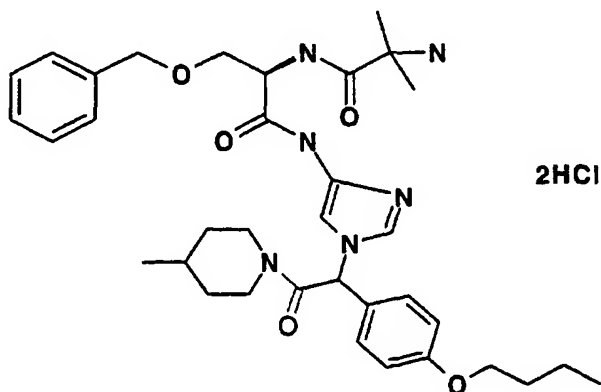
15

Preparation 89

-128-

Reaction of the product of Preparation 88 (1.0 g, 1.6 mmol), 4-methylpiperidine (0.19 mL, 1.6 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.24 g, 1.8 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (0.35 g, 1.8 mmol) in dimethylformamide (60 mL), as described in Preparation EX4A, gave 0.57 g (48%) of the desired product as a tan foam:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 0.75 (d,  $J = 6.0$  Hz, 1H), 0.85-0.95 (m, 6H), 1.25-1.40 (m, 15H), 1.40-1.75 (m, 7H), 2.55-2.75 (m, 2H), 3.00 (m, 1H), 3.55 (m, 1H), 3.60-3.85 (m, 2H), 3.95-4.00 (m, 2H), 4.60 (m, 1H), 4.85-4.98 (m, 3H), 6.97 (d,  $J = 8.7$  Hz, 1H), 6.90-7.00 (m, 2H), 7.15 (m, 1H), 7.20-7.45 (m, 10H), 10.15 (br s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 733.5 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{40}\text{H}_{56}\text{N}_6\text{O}_7$ : C, 65.55; H, 7.70; N, 11.47. Found: C, 65.44; H, 7.49; N, 11.59.

15

Compounds 22 and 23

Reaction of the product of Preparation 89 (0.55 g, 0.75 mmol) and trifluoroacetic acid (2 mL) in dichloromethane (6 mL), as described in Example 2-7, gave 0.4 g (75%) of the desired product as a mixture diastereomers. This material was resolved by HPLC (Kromsil CHI-DMP chiral stationary phase, 3A alcohol/dimethylethylamine/heptane) to provide the desired diastereomers, both isolated as white solids after acidification with hydrochloric acid as described in Example 2-9:

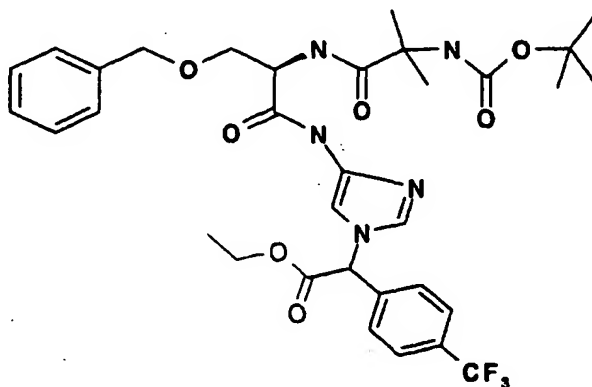
-129-

**Compound 22. (isomer 1):**  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 0.75 (d,  $J = 6.4$  Hz, 1H), 0.85-1.00 (m, 5H), 1.25-1.40 (m, 2H), 1.40-1.50 (m, 2H), 1.50-1.60 (m, 6H), 1.60-1.75 (m, 4H), 2.60-2.70 (m, 2H), 3.00 (m, 1H), 3.60-3.75 (m, 3H), 3.95-4.00 (m, 2H),  
5 4.52 (s, 2H), 4.75 (m, 1H), 4.88 (m, 1H), 6.89 (d,  $J = 14$  Hz, 1H), 7.00-7.05 (m, 2H), 7.20-7.40 (m, 9H), 8.10 (m, 1H), 8.20-8.30 (m, 3H), 8.60 (m, 1H), 11.02 (br s, 1H);  $t_R = 5.90$  min; MS (high res) calc'd for  $\text{C}_{35}\text{H}_{49}\text{N}_6\text{O}_5$ : 633.3764. Found: 633.3768. Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{35}\text{H}_{49}\text{N}_6\text{O}_5 \cdot 2.3\text{HCl}$ : C, 58.66; H, 7.07; N, 11.73. Found: C, 58.59; H, 6.99; N, 11.46.

**Compound 23. (isomer 2):**  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 0.75 (d,  $J = 6.4$  Hz, 1H), 0.85-1.00 (m, 5H), 1.25-1.40 (m, 2H), 1.40-1.50 (m, 2H), 1.50-1.60 (m, 6H), 1.60-1.75 (m, 4H), 2.60-2.70 (m, 2H), 3.00 (m, 1H), 3.60-3.75 (m, 3H), 3.95-4.00 (m, 2H),  
15 4.52 (s, 2H), 4.75 (m, 1H), 4.88 (m, 1H), 6.89 (d,  $J = 14$  Hz, 1H), 7.00-7.05 (m, 2H), 7.20-7.40 (m, 9H), 8.10 (m, 1H), 8.20-8.30 (m, 3H), 8.60 (m, 1H), 11.02 (br s, 1H);  $t_R = 7.47$  min; MS (high res) calc'd for  $\text{C}_{35}\text{H}_{49}\text{N}_6\text{O}_5$ : 633.3764. Found: 633.3762. Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{35}\text{H}_{49}\text{N}_6\text{O}_5 \cdot \text{HCl}$ : C, 59.57; H, 7.14; N, 11.91. Found: C, 59.74; H, 7.30; N, 11.72.

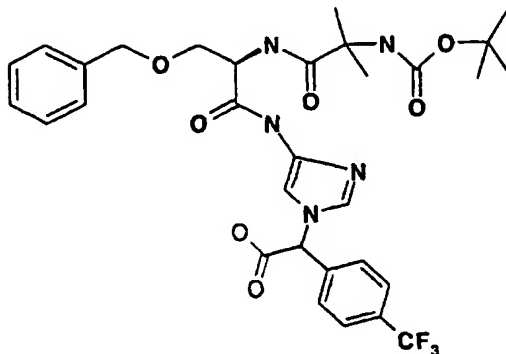
**Example 2-19**

## Preparation EX11A



-130-

Hydrogenation of the product of Preparation 8 (8.5 g, 24.8 mmol) with 10% palladium on carbon (6.0 g) in tetrahydrofuran (70 mL) followed by coupling with the product of Preparation 1 (9.5 g, 24.8 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (3.7 g, 27.3 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (5.6 g, 27.3 mmol), as described in Preparation 5A, gave 12.8 g (77%) of the above-described product, as a tan foam:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 1.17 (t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 3H), 1.25-1.35 (m, 15H), 3.60 (m, 1H), 3.70 (m, 1H), 4.27 (q,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 2H), 4.44 (d,  $J = 2.6$  Hz, 2H), 4.60 (m, 1H), 6.63 (s, 1H), 7.23-7.30 (m, 7H), 7.45 (m, 1H), 7.58-7.65 (m, 3H), 7.81 (d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 2H), 10.25 (br s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 676.5 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{33}\text{H}_{40}\text{F}_3\text{N}_5\text{O}_7$ : C, 58.66; H, 5.97; N, 10.36. Found: C, 58.58; H, 6.17; N, 10.27.



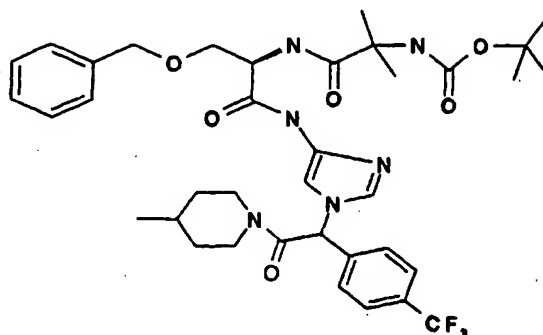
Reaction of the product of Preparation EX11A (12.3 g, 18.2 mmol) and lithium hydroxide (0.52 g, 21.8 mmol) in dioxane (100 mL) and water (75 mL), as described in Preparation 5, gave 11.8 g (100%) of the above-identified product as tan foam:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 1.20-1.35 (m, 15 H), 3.60 (m, 1H), 3.65 (m, 1H), 4.45 (d,  $J = 2.6$  Hz, 2H), 4.60 (m, 1H), 6.46 (s, 1H), 7.15 (m, 1H), 7.20-7.35 (m, 6H), 7.42 (m, 1H), 7.57-7.65 (m, 3H), 7.79 (d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 2H), 10.25 (br s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 648.9 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for



-131-

$C_{31}H_{36}F_3N_5O_7$ : C, 57.41; H, 5.60; N, 10.81. Found: C, 57.31; H, 5.59; N, 10.53.

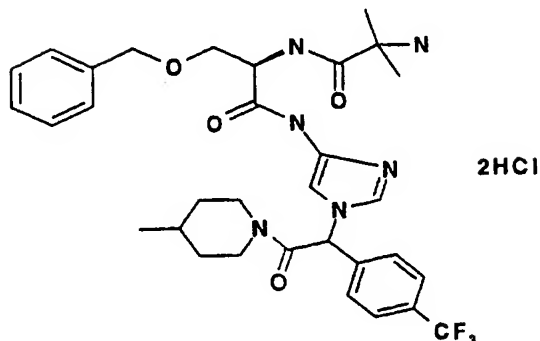
## Preparation EX11C



5

Reaction of the product of Preparation EX11B (8.0 g, 12.3 mmol), 4-methylpiperidine (1.5 mL, 12.3 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (1.83 g, 13.5 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (2.8 g, 13.5 mmol) in N,N-dimethylformamide (150 mL), as described in Preparation 4A, gave 7.33 g (81%) of above-identified product as a tan foam:  $^1H$ -NMR (d, DMSO) 0.78 (d, J = 6.0 Hz, 1.5H), 0.84 (d, J = 6.0 Hz, 1.5H), 0.95 (m, 1H), 1.25-1.35 (m, 16H), 1.50-1.70 (m, 4H), 2.65 (m, 1H), 3.60 (m, 1H), 3.67 (m, 1H), 3.80 (m, 1H), 4.35-4.50 (m, 3H), 4.60 (m, 1H), 6.88 (d, J = 9.8 Hz, 1H), 7.20-7.30 (m, 7H), 7.45 (m, 1H), 7.48-7.55 (m, 2H), 7.60 (m, 1H), 7.75-7.85 (m, 2H), 10.25 (br s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 729 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $C_{37}H_{47}F_3N_6O_6$ : C, 60.98; H, 6.50; N, 11.53. Found: C, 61.24; H, 6.44; N, 11.77.

-132-

Compounds 24 and 25

Reaction of the product of Preparation EX11C (7.0 g, 10.0 mmol) and trifluoroacetic acid (10 mL) in dichloromethane (25 mL) as described in Example 2-7 gave 5.62 g (93%) of the desired product (Example 11) (3.0 g) as a tan foam which was purified by HPLC (8 x 15 cm Prochrom column packed with Kromasil CHI-DMP chiral phase with an eluent mixture of 3A alcohol and dimethylethylamine in heptane) to give 1.5 g (45 %) of Example 11, isomer 1 and 1.1 g (30 %) of Example 11, isomer 2.

**Compound 24 (isomer 1):**  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 0.25 (m, 1H), 0.76 (d,  $J = 6.4$  Hz, 1.5H), 0.86 (d,  $J = 6.4$  Hz, 1.5H), 1.00 (m, 1H), 1.45-1.70 (m, 8H), 2.65-2.75 (m, 2H), 3.15 (m, 1H), 3.65-3.80 (m, 3H), 4.40 (m, 1H), 4.51 (s, 2H), 4.75 (m, 2H), 7.10 (d,  $J = 12.8$  Hz, 1H), 7.20-7.40 (m, 6H), 7.58 (d,  $J = 8.0$  Hz, 1H), 7.67 (d,  $J = 8.0$  Hz, 1H), 7.80-7.90 (m, 2H), 8.10 (br s, 1H), 8.20-8.35 (m, 3H), 8.55 (d,  $J = 7.5$  Hz, 1H), 10.95 (br s, 1H);  $t_R = 8.23$  min; MS (ion spray) 629.3 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{39}\text{F}_3\text{N}_6\text{O}_4 \cdot 2\text{HCl}$ : C, 54.78; H, 5.89; N, 11.98. Found: C, 54.85; H, 5.71; N, 11.70.

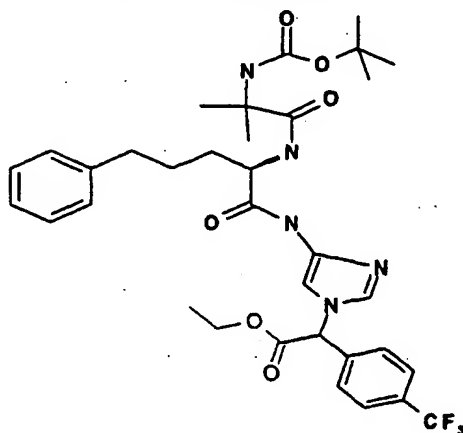
**Compound 25 (isomer 2):**  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 0.25 (m, 1H), 0.76 (d,  $J = 6.4$  Hz, 1.5H), 0.86 (d,  $J = 6.4$  Hz, 1.5H), 1.00 (m, 1H), 1.45-1.70 (m, 8H), 2.65-2.75 (m, 2H), 3.15 (m, 1H), 3.65-3.80 (m, 3H), 4.40 (m, 1H), 4.51 (s, 2H), 4.75 (m, 2H), 7.10 (d,  $J = 12.8$  Hz, 1H), 7.20-7.40 (m, 6H), 7.58 (d,  $J =$

-133-

8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.67 (d, J = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.80-7.90 (m, 2H), 8.10 (br s, 1H), 8.20-8.35 (m, 3H), 8.55 (d, J = 7.5 Hz, 1H), 10.95 (br s, 1H);  $t_R$  = 10.77 min; MS (ion spray) 629.3 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $C_{32}H_{39}F_3N_6O_4 \cdot 2.2HCl$ : C, 54.22; H, 5.86; N, 11.85. Found: C, 54.15; H, 5.84; N, 11.64.

### Example 2-20

#### Preparation 37



10 A mixture of the product of Preparation 8 (11.1 g, 32.3 mmol) and 5% palladium on carbon (1.7 g) in tetrahydrofuran (100 mL) was hydrogenated at 60 psi at room temperature using a Parr apparatus. After 1.5 hours, the resulting brown solution was filtered through celite and concentrated

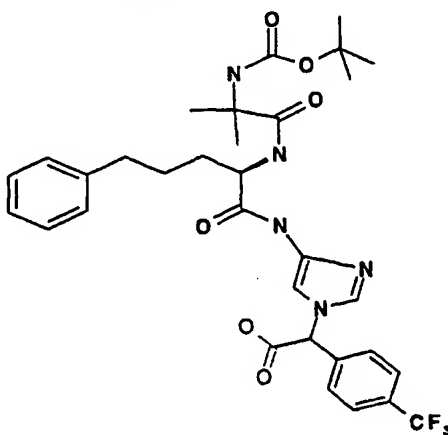
15 to give 8.8 g (87%) crude oil which was used without purification. To a mixture of the amine stirring at 0 °C in tetrahydrofuran (20 mL) was added the product of Preparation 2 (10.6 g, 28.1 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (30 mL). To this mixture was added 1-hydroxy-7-azobenzotriazole (4.0 g, 29.5

20 mmol) and 1,3-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (6.1 g, 29.5 mmol). The solution was allowed to warm to room temperature and the resulting mixture filtered after 3 days. The filtrate was concentrated and subsequently purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 3.5% methanol/dichloromethane)

25 to provide 12.1 g (64%) of the desired product as an orange

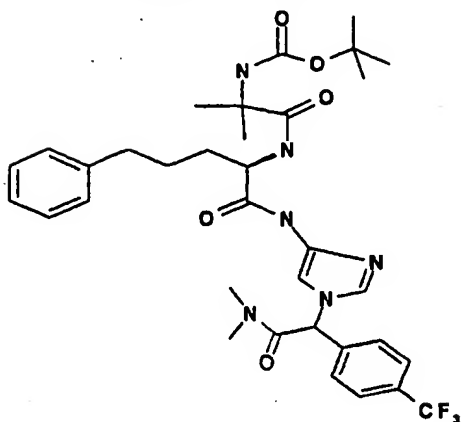
-134-

solid:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 1.15 (t,  $J = 7$  Hz, 3H), 1.18-1.32 (m, 15H), 1.35-1.70 (m, 4H), 3.23 (m, 2H), 4.19 (q,  $J = 7$  Hz, 2H), 4.31 (m, 1H), 6.58 (s, 1H), 7.00 (br s, 1H), 7.05-7.22 (m, 6H), 7.41 (m, 1H), 7.52-7.58 (m, 3H), 7.75 (d,  $J = 8$  Hz, 2H), 10.19 (br s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 674.7 (M+1);  
 5 Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{34}\text{H}_{42}\text{F}_3\text{N}_5\text{O}_6$ : C, 60.61; H, 6.28; N, 10.39. Found: C, 60.44; H, 6.48; N, 10.36.

Preparation 38

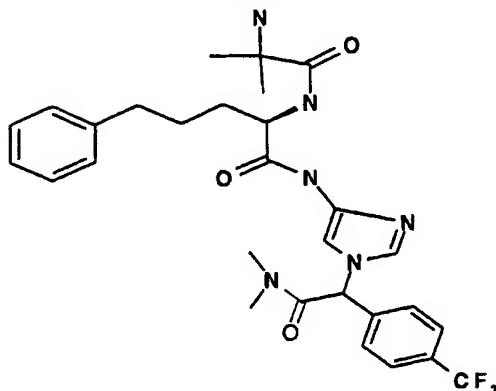
10

To a solution of the product of Preparation 37 (12.0 g, 17.8 mmol) stirring in dioxane (20 ml) and water (20 ml) at room temperature was added lithium hydroxide (0.84 g, 35.6 mmol). After 90 min with intermittent sonication, the  
 15 reaction was poured into a solution of sodium bisulfate (12 g/50 mL H<sub>2</sub>O) and brine (20 mL) then extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined organic extracts were dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated to provide 11.5 g (100%) of the desired product as a tan solid:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 1.17-1.31 (m, 15 H), 1.40-1.70 (m, 4H), 2.45 (m, 2H),  
 20 4.33 (m, 1H), 6.40 (s, 1H), 7.00 (m, 1H), 7.05-7.23 (m, 6H), 7.40 (m, 1H), 7.55-7.71 (m, 3H), 7.76 (d,  $J = 8$  Hz, 2H), 10.25 (br s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 646.6 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{38}\text{F}_3\text{N}_5\text{O}_6 \cdot 0.7 \text{ H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 58.39; H, 6.03; N, 10.64. Found:  
 25 C, 58.52; H, 6.01; N, 9.87\*.

Preparation 39

To a solution of the product of Preparation 38 (6.0 g, 9.3 mmol) stirring at 0°C in dimethylformamide was added dimethylamine hydrochloride (0.76 g, 9.3 mmol), diethylcyanophosphonate (1.41 mL, 9.3 mmol), and triethylamine (1.29 mL, 9.3 mmol). After 30 min, a second equivalent of dimethylamine hydrochloride, DECP and triethylamine were added. After 30 min, the reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (300 mL) and washed with aqueous sodium bisulfate and brine. The organic extract was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated. The resulting crude material was purified by radial chromatography (silica gel, 4% methanol in dichloromethane) to give 4.7 g (75%) of the desired product as a tan foam: <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (d, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.25(s, 9H), 1.42(s, 6H), 1.60-1.80 (m, 4H), 1.90 (br s, 1H), 2.57 (m, 2H), 2.98 (s, 6H), 4.48 (m, 1H), 7.05-7.21 (m, 6H), 7.50(m, 1H), 7.62-7.76 (m, 5H), 8.93 (br s, 1H), 10.93 (br s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 673.7 (M+1).

-136-

Compounds 26 and 27

To the product of Preparation 39 (4.7 g, 7.0 mmol) was stirred at room temperature in a saturated solution of hydrochloric acid in glacial acetic acid (30 mL). After 90 min, the mixture was concentrated. The resulting material diluted with ethyl acetate and extracted with aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The organic extract was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated to give 3.7 g (93%) of an orange solid. MS (ion spray) 573.4 (M+1). The diastereomers (3.4 g) were separated by chiral chromatography using a Kromasil-CHI normal phase column to provide 1.40 g (41%) of isomer 1 and 1.26 g (37%) of isomer 2. The individual isomers were dissolved in a saturated solution of hydrochloric acid in glacial acetic acid (4 mL) and subsequently concentrated to provide the desired products as tan solids:

**Compound 26 (isomer 1)** <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (d, DMSO) 1.41 (s, 3H), 1.42 (s, 3H), 1.51-1.73 (m, 4H), 2.53 (m, 2H), 2.82 (s, 3H), 2.84 (s, 3H), 4.39 (m, 1H), 6.91 (s, 1H), 7.10 (m, 3H), 7.18-7.29 (m, 3H), 7.55 (d, J = 8 Hz, 2H), 7.78 (d, J = 8 Hz, 2H), 7.91 (br s, 1H), 8.15 (br s, 3H), 8.38 (d, J = 7.5 Hz, 1H), 10.78 (br s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 573.4 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>35</sub>F<sub>3</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>3</sub>·2.3HCl: C, 53.06; H, 5.73; N, 12.80. Found: C, 52.90; H, 5.66; N, 12.70.

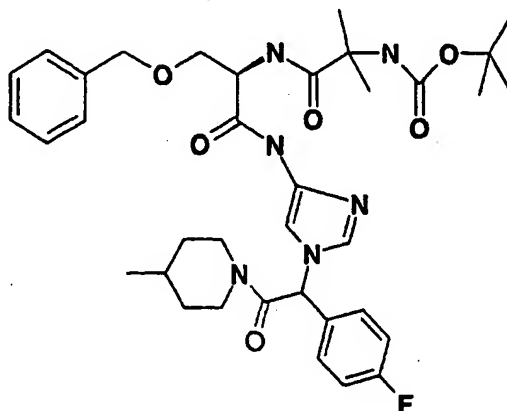
-137-

**Compound 27. (isomer 2)**  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 1.42 (s, 6H), 1.51-1.73 (m, 4H), 2.53 (m, 2H), 2.82 (s, 3H), 2.84 (s, 3H), 4.39 (m, 1H), 6.91 (s, 1H), 7.10 (m, 3H), 7.18-7.29 (m, 3H), 7.55 (d,  $J = 8$  Hz, 2H), 7.78 (d,  $J = 8$  Hz, 2H), 7.91 (br s, 1H), 8.15 (br s, 3H), 8.38 (d,  $J = 7.5$  Hz, 1H), 10.78 (br s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 573.4 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{35}\text{F}_3\text{N}_6\text{O}_3 \cdot 2\text{HCl}$ : C, 53.96; H, 5.78; N, 13.02. Found: C, 53.84; H, 5.71; N, 12.93.

10

Example 2-21

## Preparation EX12A

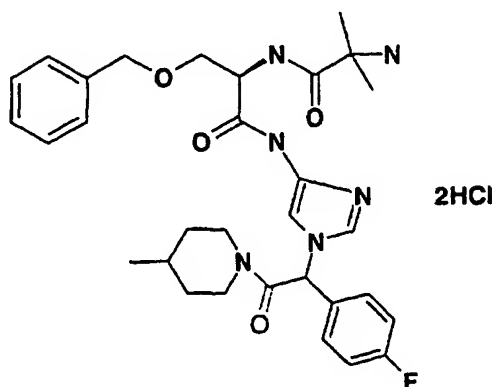


Reaction of product of Preparation 10 (9.2 g, 15.4 mmol), 4-methylpiperidine (1.83 mL, 15.4 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (2.3 g, 17 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (3.5 g, 17 mmol) in dimethylformamide (100 mL) as described in Preparation EX4A gave 9.7 g (93%) of the desired product (Preparation EX12A), as follows, as a tan foam:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 0.76 (d,  $J = 6.1$  Hz, 1.5H), 0.86 (d,  $J = 6.1$  Hz, 1.5H), 1.00 (m, 1H), 1.20-1.40 (m, 15H), 1.45-1.70 (m, 3H), 2.55-2.70 (m, 2H), 3.05 (m, 1H), 3.60 (m, 1H), 3.65-3.75 (m, 2H), 4.40 (m, 1H), 4.44 (d,  $J = 2.6$  Hz, 2H), 4.60 (m, 1H), 6.73 (d,  $J = 11.3$  Hz, 1H), 7.15-7.35 (m, 9H), 7.35-7.50 (m, 4H), 10.20 (br s, 1H).

-138-

MS (ion spray) 679.6 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $C_{36}H_{47}FN_6O_6$ : C, 63.70; H, 6.98; N, 12.38. Found: C, 63.44; H, 6.86; N, 12.22.

5

Compounds 28 and 29

Reaction of the product of Preparation EX12A (9.7 g, 14.3 mmol) with trifluoroacetic acid (16 mL) in dichloromethane (40 mL), as described in Example 2-7, gave 6.8 g (73%) of the desired product (Example 12) as a mixture of diastereoisomers. The mixture (3.2 g) was purified by HPLC (8 x 15 cm Prochrom column packed with Kromasil CHI-DMP chiral phase with an eluent mixture of 3A alcohol and dimethylethylamine in heptane) to give 0.8 g (24 %) of isomer 1 and 0.9 g (26 %) of isomer 2 as white solids:

**Compound 28 (Isomer 1).**  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 0.75 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 1.5H), 0.88 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 1.5H), 1.10 (m, 1H), 1.35 (m, 1H), 1.45-1.70 (m, 8H), 2.60-2.75 (m, 2H), 3.15 (m, 1H), 3.65-3.85 (m, 3H), 4.35 (m, 1H), 4.52 (s, 2H), 4.75 (m, 1H), 6.95 (d, J = 11.3 Hz, 1H), 7.20-7.49 (m, 9H), 7.45 (m, 1H), 7.52 (m, 1H), 8.05 (br s, 1H), 8.25 (m, 3H), 8.56 (m, 1H), 10.95 (br s, 1H);  $t_R$  = 6.73 min; MS (ion spray) 579.4 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $C_{31}H_{39}FN_6O_4 \cdot 2\text{HCl} \cdot 0.2\text{CHCl}_3$ : C, 56.29; H, 6.24; N, 12.67. Found: C, 56.47; H, 6.17; N, 12.24.



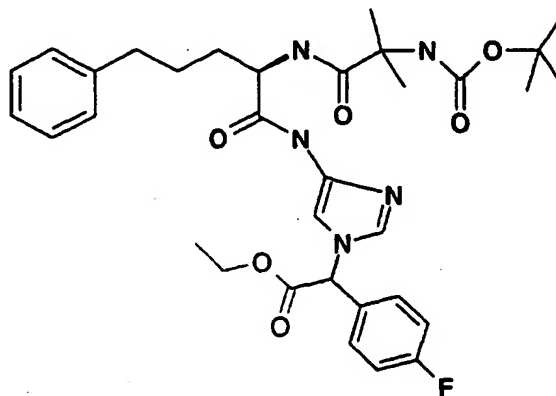
-139-

Compound 29 (Isomer 2)  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 0.75 (d,  $J = 6.4$  Hz, 1.5H), 0.88 (d,  $J = 6.4$  Hz, 1.5H), 1.10 (m, 1H), 1.35 (m, 1H), 1.45-1.70 (m, 8H), 2.60-2.75 (m, 2H), 3.15 (m, 1H), 3.65-3.85 (m, 3H), 4.35 (m, 1H), 4.52 (s, 2H), 4.75 (m, 1H), 6.95 (d,  $J = 11.3$  Hz, 1H), 7.20-7.49 (m, 9H), 7.45 (m, 1H), 7.52 (m, 1H), 8.05 (br s, 1H), 8.25 (m, 3H), 8.56 (m, 1H), 10.95 (br s, 1H);  $t_R = 9.09$  min; MS (ion spray) 579.4 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{31}\text{H}_{39}\text{FN}_6\text{O}_4 \cdot 2\text{HCl}$ : C, 57.14; H, 6.34; N, 12.90. Found: C, 57.17; H, 6.18; N, 12.79.

10

Example 2-22

## Preparation EX13A



15

Reduction of the product of Preparation 9 (4.8 g, 16.0 mmol) with 10% palladium on carbon (5.0 g) and tetrahydrofuran (160 mL) followed by coupling with the product of Preparation 2 (6.0 g, 16.0 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (2.4 g, 17.6 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (3.6 g, 17.6 mmol) as described in Preparation 5A gave 15.4 g (77%) of the above-identified product as a tan foam:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 1.17 (t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 3H), 1.23-1.45 (m, 15H), 1.45-1.57 (m, 6H), 7.16 (q,  $J = 6.8$  Hz, 2H), 4.40 (m, 1H), 6.45 (s, 1H), 7.05 (m, 1H), 7.10-7.30 (m, 8H), 7.40-7.48 (m, 3H), 7.54 (s,

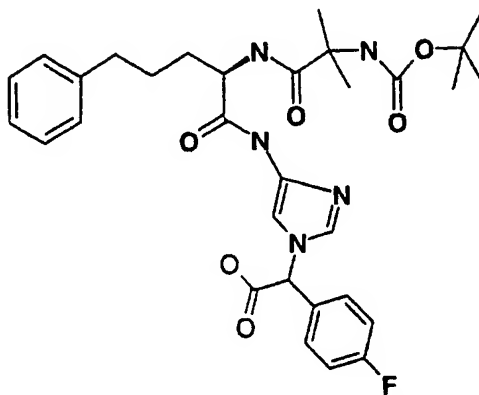
25

-140-

1H), 10.20 (br s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 624.4 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $C_{33}H_{42}FN_5O_6$ : C, 63.55; H, 6.79; N, 11.23. Found: C, 63.83; H, 6.78; N, 11.38.

5

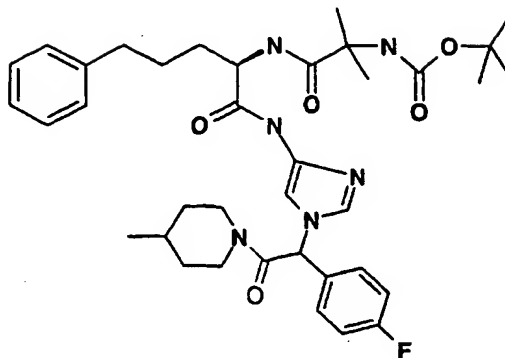
## Preparation EX13B



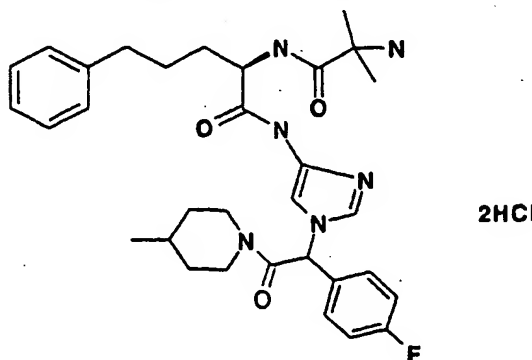
Reaction of the product of Preparation EX 13A (14.8 g, 24.0 mmol) with lithium hydroxide (0.66 g, 29.0 mmol) in dioxane (200 mL) and water (100 mL) as in described in Preparation 5 gave 14.3 g (100%) of the above-identified product as a tan foam:  $^1\text{H}$ -NMR (d, DMSO) 1.25-1.40 (m, 15H), 1.50-1.75 (m, 6H), 4.40 (s, 1H), 6.60 (s, 1H), 7.05 (s, 1H), 7.10-7.30 (m, 8H), 7.40-7.50 (m, 3H), 7.55 (s, 1H), 10.2 (br s, 1H), 13.63 (br s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 596.5 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $C_{31}H_{38}FN_5O_6 \cdot 0.1\text{dioxane}$ : C, 62.39; H, 6.47; N, 11.59. Found: C, 62.16; H, 6.56; N, 11.28.

-141-

## Preparation EX13C



Reaction of the product of Preparation EX13B (13.3 g, 23.1 mmol), 4-methylpiperidine (3 mL, 23.1 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (3.4 g, 25.4 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (5.2 g, 25.4 mmol) in dimethylformamide (100 mL), as described in Preparation EX4A, gave 14.4 g (93%) of the above-identified product as a tan foam:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 0.76 (d,  $J = 6.4$  Hz, 1.5 H), 0.86 (d,  $J = 4.9$  Hz, 1.5H), 1.00 (m, 1H), 1.25-1.45 (m, 17H), 1.45-1.75 (m, 8H), 2.60-2.80 (m, 2H), 3.75 (m, 1H), 4.30-4.45 (m, 2H), 6.71 (d  $J = 11.7$  Hz, 1H), 7.05 (m, 1H), 7.10-7.30 (m, 9H), 7.30-7.45 (m, 3H), 10.15 (m, 1H); MS (ion spray) 677.5 ( $M+1$ ); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{49}\text{FN}_6\text{O}_5$ : C, 65.66; H, 7.30; N, 12.42. Found: C, 65.78; H, 7.19; N, 12.44.

Compounds 30 and 31

-142-

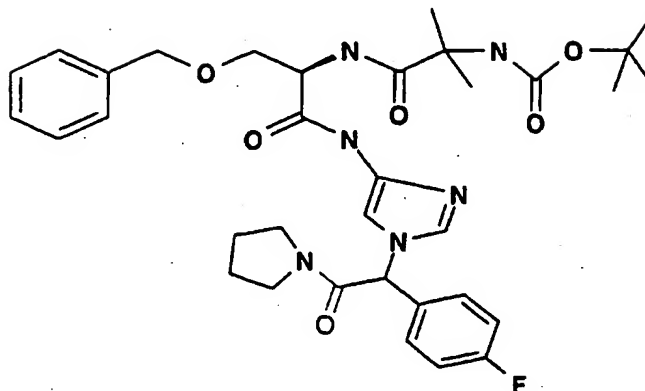
Reaction of the product of Preparation EX13C (13.8 g, 20.4 mmol) with trifluoroacetic acid (16 mL) in dichloromethane (40 mL), as described in Example 2-7 gave 5 10.5 g (89%) of the desired mixture (Example 13) as a tan foam. The mixture (4.0 g) was purified by HPLC (8 x 15 cm Prochrom column packed with Kromasil CHI-DMP chiral phase with an eluent mixture of 3A alcohol and dimethylethylamine in heptane) to give 1.5 g (38 %) of isomer 1 and 0.77 g 10 (20%) of isomer 2 as white solids:

**Compound 30 (isomer 1)**  $^1\text{H}$ -NMR (d, DMSO) 0.75 (t, J = 6.4 Hz, 1.5 H), 0.87 (t, J = 6.0 Hz, 1.5 H), 1.15 (m, 1H), 1.35 (m, 1H), 1.45-1.80 (m, 12H), 2.55-2.75 (m, 3H), 3.05 (m, 1H), 3.65-3.75 (m, 2H), 4.30-4.50 (m, 2H), 6.94 (d, J = 15 12 Hz, 1H), 7.10-7.20 (m, 2H), 7.20-7.40 (m, 7H), 7.45 (m, 1H), 7.55 (m, 1H), 8.08 (m, 1H), 8.15-8.30 (m, 3H), 8.44 (t, J = 7.2 Hz, 1H), 10.90 (br s, 1H);  $t_R$  = 6.62 min; MS (ion spray) 578.3 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{41}\text{FN}_6\text{O}_3 \cdot 2.3\text{HCl}$ : C, 58.81; H, 6.61; N, 12.72. Found: C, 57.91; H, 6.55; N, 20 12.72.

**Compound 31 (isomer 2)**  $^1\text{H}$ -NMR (d, DMSO) 0.75 (t, J = 6.4 Hz, 1.5 H), 0.87 (t, J = 6.0 Hz, 1.5 H), 1.15 (m, 1H), 1.35 (m, 1H), 1.45-1.80 (m, 12H), 2.55-2.75 (m, 3H), 3.05 (m, 1H), 3.65-3.75 (m, 2H), 4.30-4.50 (m, 2H), 6.94 (d, J = 25 12 Hz, 1H), 7.10-7.20 (m, 2H), 7.20-7.40 (m, 7H), 7.45 (m, 1H), 7.55 (m, 1H), 8.08 (m, 1H), 8.15-8.30 (m, 3H), 8.44 (t, J = 7.2 Hz, 1H), 10.90 (br s, 1H);  $t_R$  = 8.95 min; MS (ion spray) 578.3 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{41}\text{FN}_6\text{O}_3 \cdot 2.3\text{HCl}$ : C, 58.81; H, 6.61; N, 12.72. Found: C, 58.05; H, 6.64; N, 30 12.43.

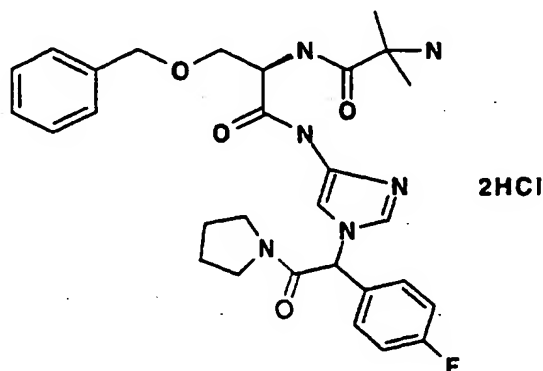
Example 2-23

## Preparation EX14A



5

Reaction of the product of Preparation 10B (0.6 g, 1.0 mmol), pyrrolidine (0.08 mL, 1.0 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.15 g, 1.1 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (0.23 g, 1.1 mmol) in dimethylformamide (20 mL) as described in Preparation EX4A gave 0.27 g (41%) of the above-identified product as a white foam:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  is consistent with structure; MS (FD) 650.5 (M<sup>+</sup>); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{34}\text{H}_{43}\text{FN}_6\text{O}_6 \cdot 0.6\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 61.73; H, 6.73; N, 12.12. Found: C, 61.98; H, 6.43; N, 12.66.

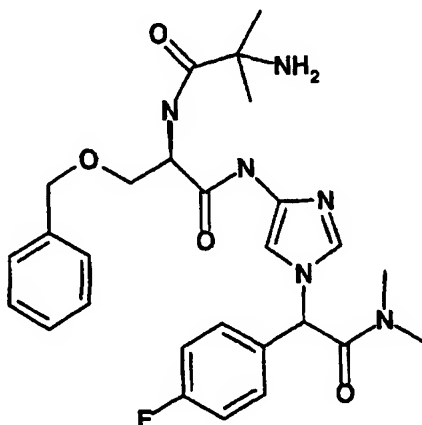
Compound 32

-144-

Reaction of the product of Preparation EX14A (0.2 g, 0.3 mmol) and trifluoroacetic acid (4 mL) in dichloromethane (6 mL), as described in Example 2-7, gave 0.16 g (84%) of the desired mixture of isomers as a yellow solid:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  is consistent with structure. MS (high res) calc'd for  $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{36}\text{FN}_6\text{O}_4$ : 551.2782. Found: 551.2790.

10

## Example 2-24

Compound 33

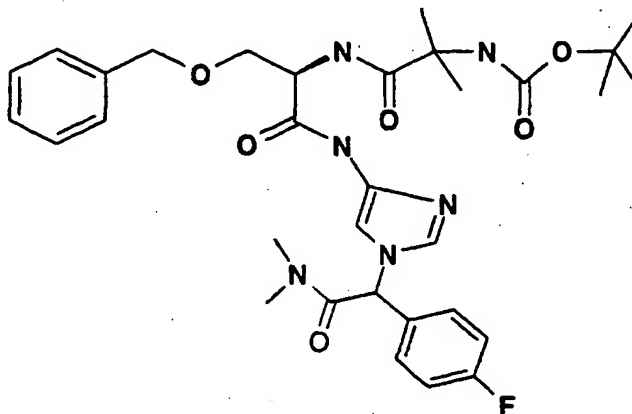
To a solution of the product of Preparation 75 (3.30 g, 5.3 mmol) stirring in dichloromethane (30 mL) at room temperature was added trifluoroacetic acid (10 mL). After 3 h, the mixture was concentrated and the residue treated with excess aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The resulting mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and the combined organic extracts were washed with 1N aqueous sodium hydroxide, dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, chloroform/methanol) to provide 1.40 g (51%) of the desired product as a light tan solid: ESMS:  $(\text{M}+\text{H})^+$  525.3.  $^1\text{H NMR}$  was consistent with product. Anal. Calc'd. for

-145-

C<sub>27</sub>H<sub>33</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>4</sub>F·1.3 methanol: C, 60.03; H, 6.80; N, 14.84. Found: C, 60.19; H, 6.81; N, 14.56. The isomeric mixture (3.20 g) was separated as previously described in Example 2-9 to give 1.57 g of isomer 1 (t<sub>R</sub> = 7.57 min) and 0.88 g of isomer 2 (t<sub>R</sub> = 10.43 min). For isomer 2, 0.88 g (1.68 mmol) was dissolved in ethyl acetate and treated with a saturated solution of hydrochloric acid in diethyl ether. The resulting mixture was concentrated, washed with diethyl ether to give 0.97 g of the desired product: ESMS: (M+H)<sup>+</sup> 525.4, 526.7. <sup>1</sup>H NMR was consistent with product. Anal. Calc'd. for C<sub>25</sub>H<sub>33</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>4</sub>F·2.75 HCl: C, 51.73; H, 6.07; N, 13.41. Found: C, 51.62; H, 5.74; N, 13.34.

15

## Example 2-25

Preparation 54

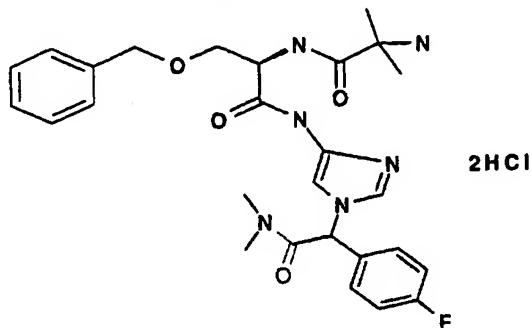
20 Reaction of the product of Preparation 10 (1.0 g, 1.7 mmol), dimethylamine hydrochloride (0.14 g, 1.7 mmol), triethylamine (0.26 mL, 1.9 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.26 g, 1.9 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (0.4 g, 1.9 mmol) in dimethylformamide (30 mL) as described in Preparation EX4A gave 0.55 g (52%) of

25

-146-

the desired product as a tan foam:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  is consistent with structure; MS (ion spray) 625.4 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{41}\text{FN}_6\text{O}_6$ : C, 61.53; H, 6.61; N, 13.45. Found: C, 61.22; H, 6.33; N, 13.44.

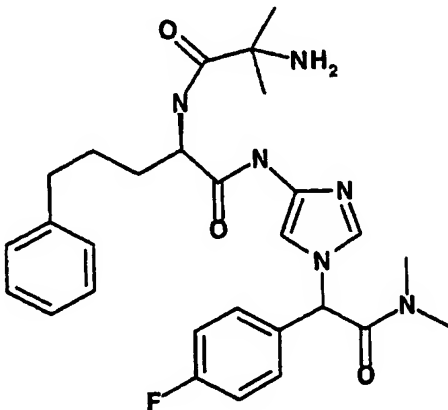
5

Compound 34

Reaction of the product of Preparation 54 (0.54 g, 0.86 mmol) and trifluoroacetic acid (2 mL), dichloromethane (6 mL) as described in Example 2-7 gave 0.4 g (77%) of the desired product as a mixture of isomers:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  is consistent with structure. MS (ion spray) 525.4 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{27}\text{H}_{33}\text{FN}_6\text{O}_6 \cdot 2\text{HCl}$ : C, 54.27; H, 5.90; N, 14.06. Found: C, 53.11; H, 5.70; N, 13.58.

15

## Example 2-26

Compound 35



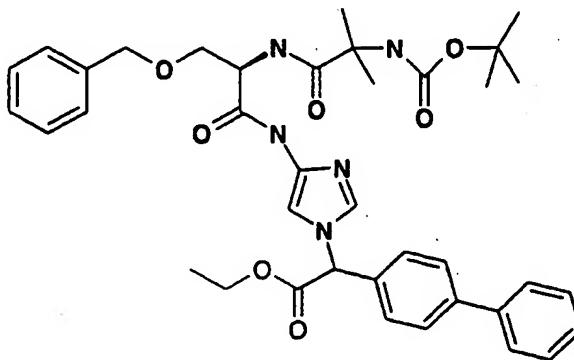
-147-

To a solution of the product of Preparation 75 (1.45 g, 2.29 mmol) stirring at room temperature in dichloromethane (50 mL) was added trifluoroacetic acid (15 mL). After 3 hours, the mixture was concentrated and the material treated with excess aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The aqueous mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and the combined organic extracts concentrate. The resulting residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, chloroform/methanol) to provide 1.55 g of the desired product: ESMS: (M+H)<sup>+</sup> 523.3. The isomeric mixture (3.44 g) was separated as previously described in Example 2-9 to provide 0.98 g of pure isomer 1 (t<sub>R</sub> = 7.94 min) and 0.81 g of isomer 2 (t<sub>R</sub> = 10.57 min). For isomer 2, 0.80 g (1.53 mmol) was dissolved in ethyl acetate/methanol and treated with a saturated solution of hydrochloric acid in diethyl ether. The resulting mixture was concentrated to provide 0.90 g (92%) of the desired product as a light tan solid: ESMS: (M+H)<sup>+</sup> 523.4, 524.5. <sup>1</sup>H NMR was consistent with product. Anal. Calc'd. for C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>35</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>3</sub>F·3.25 HCl: C, 52.46; H, 6.01; N, 13.11. Found: C, 52.49; H, 6.23; N, 11.80.

## Example 2-27

25

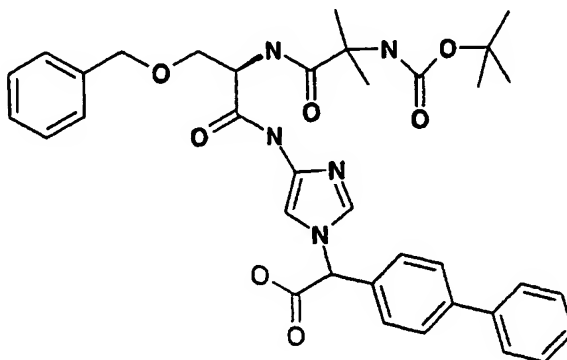
## Preparation EX15A



-148-

Reduction of the product of Preparation 11 (2.0 g, 5.8 mmol) under a hydrogen atmosphere with 10% palladium on carbon (0.8 g) and tetrahydrofuran (70 mL) followed by coupling with the product of Preparation 1 (2.2 g, 5.8 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.86 g, 6.4 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (1.3 g, 6.4 mmol), as described in Preparation 5A, gave 0.7 g (18%) of the desired product (Preparation EX15A), as follows, as a tan foam:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  is consistent with structure; MS (FD) 683 (M<sup>+</sup>); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{38}\text{H}_{45}\text{N}_5\text{O}_7$ : C, 66.75; H, 6.63; N, 10.34. Found: C, 66.79; H, 6.48; N, 10.32.

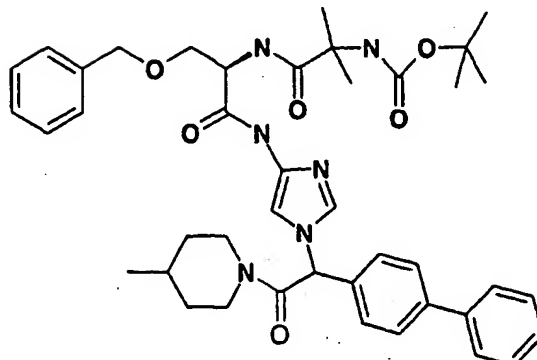
## Preparation EX15B



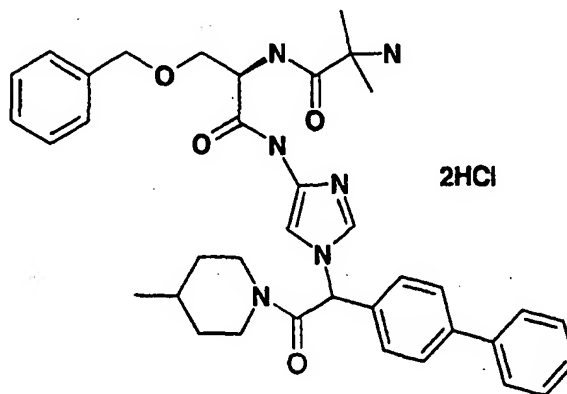
Reaction of the product of Preparation EX15A (0.7 g, 1.0 mmol) and lithium hydroxide (0.03 g, 1.2 mmol) in dioxane (20 mL) and water (10 mL), as described in Preparation 5, gave 0.66 g (100%) of the desired product (Preparation EX15B), as follows, as a tan foam:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  is consistent with structure; MS (FD) 656 (M<sup>+</sup>); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{36}\text{H}_{41}\text{N}_5\text{O}_7$ : C, 65.94; H, 6.30; N, 10.68. Found: C, 65.90; H, 6.37; N, 10.42.

-149-

## Preparation EX15C



Reaction of the product of Preparation EX15B (0.7 g, 1.1 mmol) with 4-methylpiperidine (0.13 mL, 1.1 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.17 g, 1.2 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (0.25 g, 1.2 mmol) in dimethylformamide (40 mL), as described in Preparation EX4A, gave 0.52 g (65%) of the above-identified product as a tan foam:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  is consistent with structure; MS (FD) 728.4 (M<sup>+</sup>); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{47}\text{F}_3\text{N}_6\text{O}_6$ : C, 60.98; H, 6.50; N, 11.53. Found: C, 61.18; H, 6.35; N, 11.44.

Compounds 38 and 39

15

Reaction of the product of Preparation EX15C (0.36 g, 0.49 mmol) and trifluoroacetic acid (4 mL) in

-150-

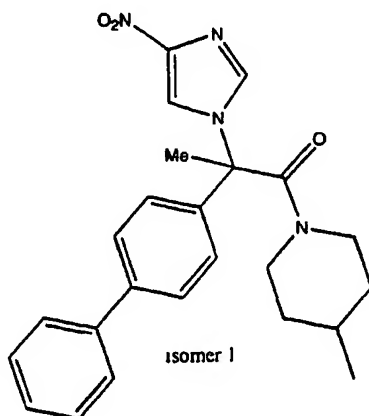
dichloromethane (12 mL), as described in Example 2-7, gave 0.3 g (88%) of the desired mixture (Example 15) of isomers. Resolution of the diastereomers (4 g, 3.6 mmol) by HPLC (Kromsil CHI-DMP chiral stationary phase, 3A alcohol/  
5 dimethylethylamine /heptane eluant) provided 0.6 (16 %) of isomer 1 and 0.5 mg (12 %) of isomer 2, both isolated as white solids after formation of their respective hydrochloride salts as described in Example 2-9:

**Compound 38 (Isomer 1).**  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  is consistent with  
10 structure;  $t_R = 6.9$  min; MS (ion spray) 637.4 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{44}\text{N}_6\text{O}_4 \cdot 2.5\text{HCl}$ : C, 61.05; H, 6.44; N, 11.54. Found: C, 60.89; H, 6.53; N, 11.25.

**Compound 39 (Isomer 2)**  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  is consistent with  
structure;  $t_R = 9.2$  min; MS (ion spray) 637.4 (M+1); Anal.  
15 Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{44}\text{N}_6\text{O}_4 \cdot 2.6\text{HCl}$ : C, 60.75; H, 6.42; N, 11.49. Found: C, 60.67; H, 6.63; N, 11.18.

#### Example 2-28

#### Preparation EX16A



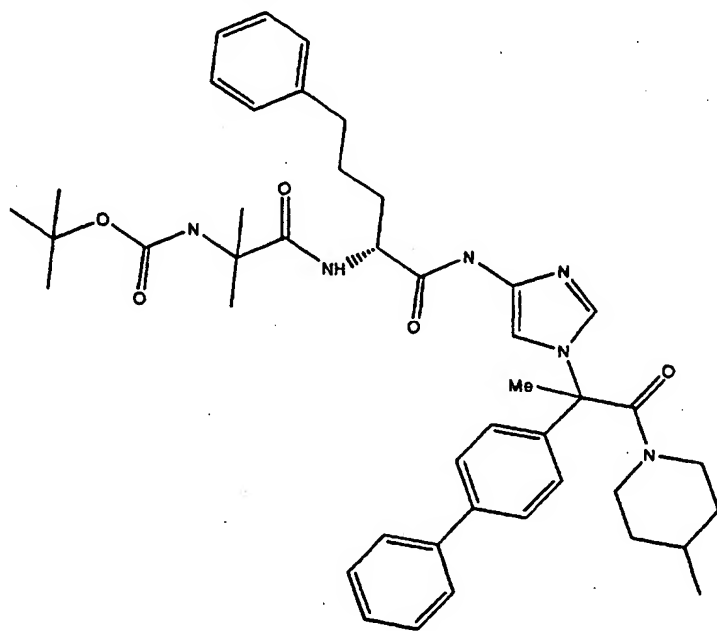
20

Prepared as in Preparation Ex2A using the product of Preparation 12B, diastereomer 1 (0.40 g, 0.80 mmol) in THF (20 mL) and lithium hydroxide (0.04 g, 0.96 mmol) in water  
25 (10 mL) to give the crude acid. The resulting crude solid

-151-

was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (50 mL) and reacted with catalytic DMF (0.1 mL) and excess oxalyl chloride (5 g) to give the crude acid chloride. The resulting crude foam was dissolved in anhydrous  
5 dichloromethane (50 mL) and reacted with 4-dimethylaminopyridine (catalytic, 10 mg) and 4-methylpiperidine (0.24 mL, 2.89 mmol) to yield the desired product (Preparation EX16A), as follows, (0.30 g, 90% yield) as a colorless foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent  
10 with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{24}\text{H}_{26}\text{N}_4\text{O}_3$ ; 68.88 C, 6.26 H, 13.39 N; found 67.40 C, 6.72 H, 12.45 N; FDMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 419.

## Preparation EX16B



15

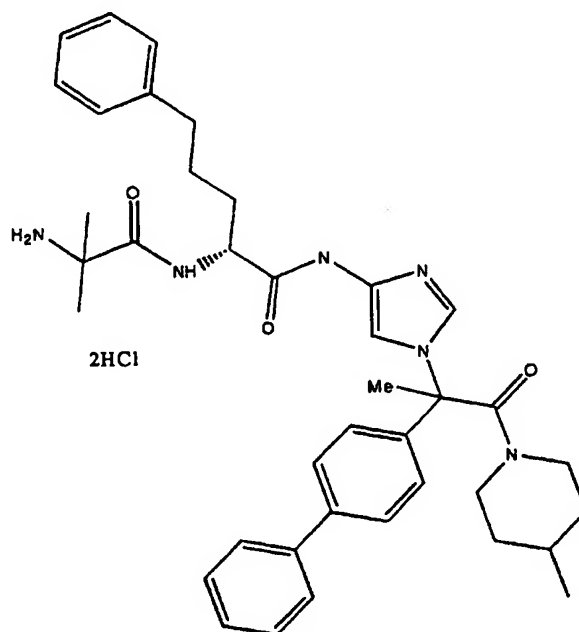
Prepared, as in Preparation EX2B, using the product of Preparation EX16A (0.35 g, 0.84 mmol) and 5% palladium on carbon (0.35 g, catalytic, 25 mL THF) to give the crude amine. The resulting filtrate was reacted with HOBT (0.11  
20 g, 0.84 mmol), the product of Preparation 2 (0.32 g, 0.84 mmol), and DCC (0.17 g, 0.92 mmol) to yield the desired

-152-

product (Preparation EX16B), as follows; (0.22 g, 35% yield) as a light yellow foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{44}\text{H}_{56}\text{N}_6\text{O}_5$ ; 70.56 C, 7.54 H, 11.22 N; found 70.22 C, 7.58 H, 11.21 N; ISMS

5 (M+) - 749.

Compound 40



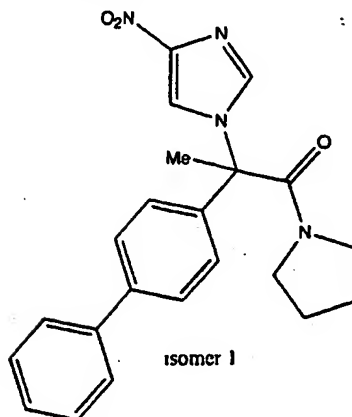
10 Prepared, as in Example 2-13, using the product of Preparation EX16B (0.22 g, 0.29 mmol), trifluoroacetic acid (4.0 mL), anisole (0.4 mL), and dichloromethane (20 mL) to yield the desired product (Example 16) (0.19 g, %) as a pale yellow solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with

15 structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{39}\text{H}_{50}\text{N}_6\text{O}_3\text{Cl}_2$ ; 64.90 C, 6.98 H, 11.64 N; found 66.48 C, 7.24 H, 11.96 N; FDMS (M+) - 649.

-153-

Example 2-29

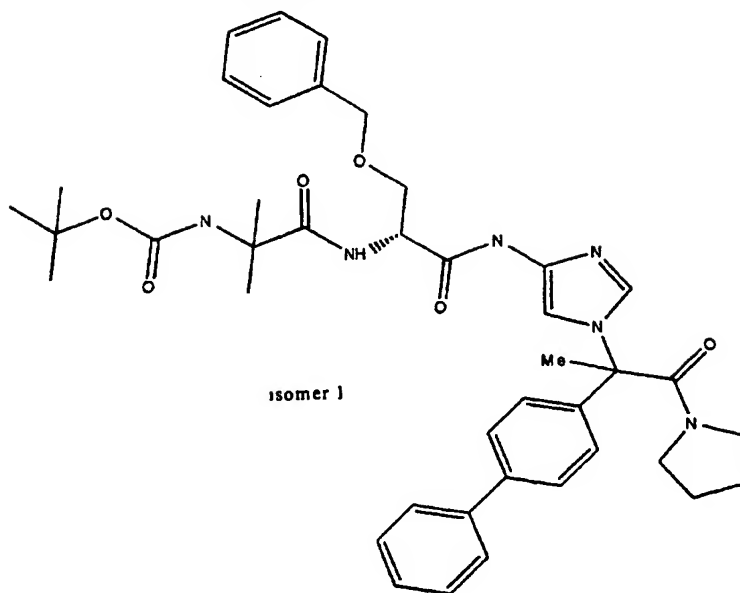
## Preparation EX17A



- 5        Prepared as in Preparation EX2A using the product of Preparation 12B, diastereomer 1 (1.00 g, 2.02 mmol) in THF (20 mL) and lithium hydroxide (0.13 g, 3.09 mmol) in water (10 mL) to give the crude acid.    The resulting crude solid
- 10    reacted with catalytic DMF (0.1 mL) and excess oxalyl chloride (5 g). The resulting crude foam was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (20 mL) and reacted with 4-Dimethylaminopyridine (catalytic, 10 mg) and pyrrolidine (0.65 mL, 7.76 mmol) to yield the desired product
- 15    (Preparation EX17A) (0.80 g, 98% yield) as a colorless foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{22}\text{H}_{22}\text{N}_4\text{O}_3$ ; 67.68 C, 5.68 H, 14.34 N; found 65.36 C, 5.54 H, 13.43 N; ISMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 391.

-154-

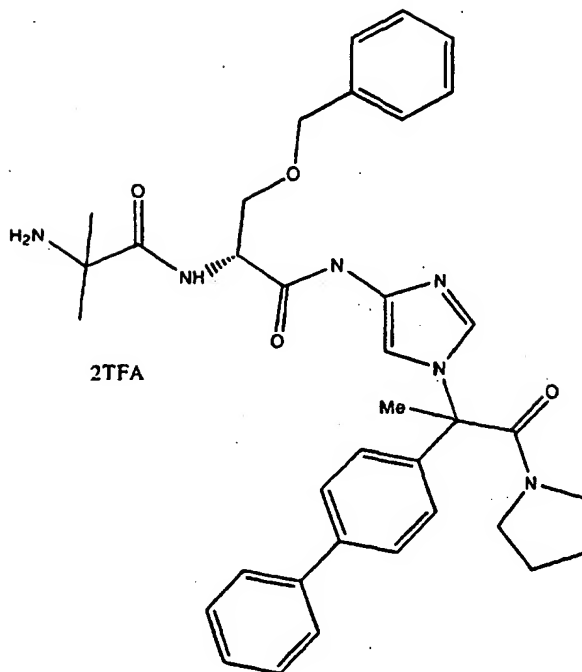
## Preparation EX17B



Prepared as in Preparation EX2B using the product of  
 5 Preparation EX17A (0.80 g, 2.05 mmol) and 5% palladium on  
 carbon (0.80 g, catalytic, 25 mL THF) to yield the crude  
 amine. The filtrate was reacted with HOBT (0.28 g, 2.05  
 mmol), the product of Preparation 1 (0.78 g, 2.05 mmol), and  
 DCC (0.46 g, 2.05 mmol) to yield the desired product  
 10 (Preparation EX17B), as follows, (0.76 g, 51% yield) as a  
 light yellow foam: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) - consistent  
 with structure; Anal. calc'd. for C<sub>41</sub>H<sub>50</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>6</sub>; 68.12 C, 6.97 H,  
 11.63 N; found 66.93 C, 6.74 H, 11.24 N; ISMS (M<sup>+</sup>) - 723.



-155-

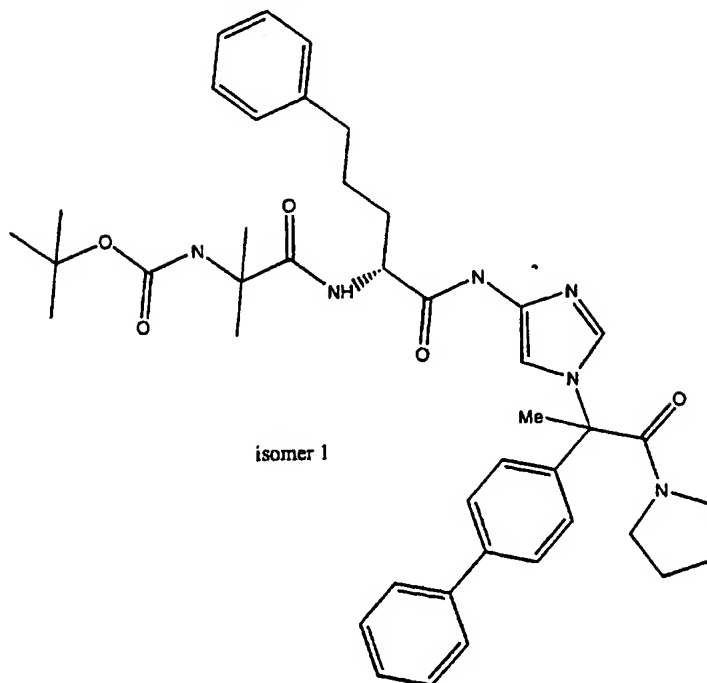
Compound 41

Prepared as in Example 2-13 using the product of  
5 Preparation EX17B (0.76 g, 1.05 mmol), trifluoroacetic acid  
(2.0 mL), anisole (0.2 mL), and dichloromethane (8.0 mL) to  
yield the desired product (Example 17) (0.76 g, 85% yield)  
as an off white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) - consistent  
with structure; Anal. calc'd. for C<sub>40</sub>H<sub>44</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>8</sub>F<sub>6</sub>; 56.47 C, 5.21  
10 H, 9.88 N; found 56.24 C, 5.32 H, 9.86 N; ISMS (M<sup>+</sup>) - 623.

-156-

Example 2-30

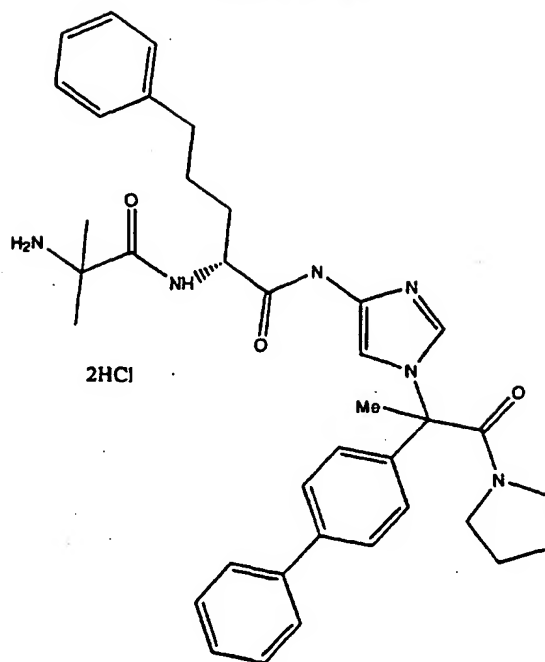
## Preparation EX18A



Prepared as in Preparation EX2B using the product of  
5 Preparation EX17A (0.60 g, 1.54 mmol) and 5% palladium on  
carbon (0.60 g, catalytic, 25 mL THF) to give the crude  
amine. The resulting filtrate was reacted with HOBT (0.21  
g, 1.54 mmol), the product of Preparation 2 (0.58 g, 1.54  
mmol), and DCC (0.35 g, 1.69 mmol) to yield the desired  
10 product (Preparation EX18A), as follows, (0.56 g, 50% yield)  
as a light yellow foam: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) -  
consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for C<sub>42</sub>H<sub>52</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>5</sub>; 69.98  
C, 7.27 H, 11.66 N; found 68.71 C, 6.92 H, 11.39 N; ISMS  
(M<sup>+</sup>) - 721.

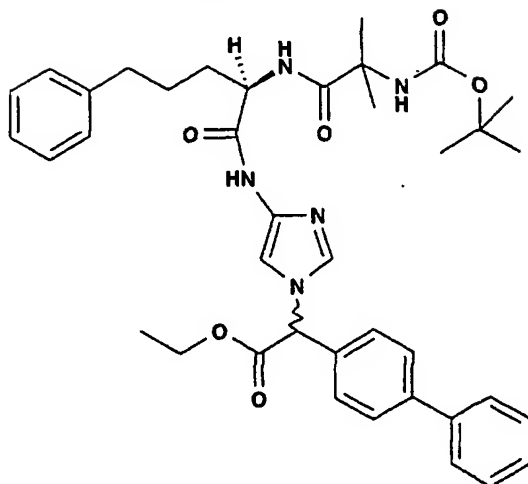
15

-157-

Compound 42

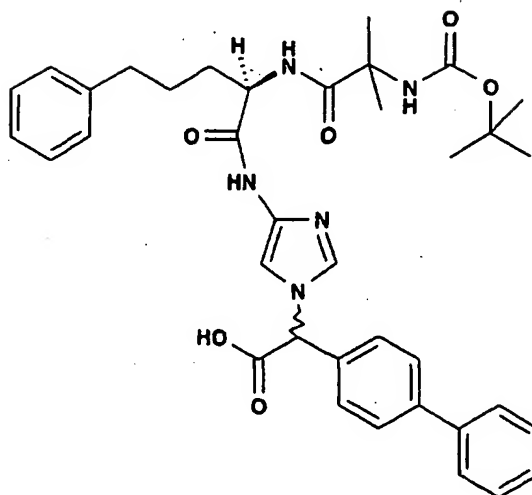
Prepared as in Example 2-13 using the product of Preparation EX18A (0.52 g, 0.72 mmol), trifluoroacetic acid 5 (4.0 mL), anisole (0.4 mL), and dichloromethane (20 mL) to yield the desired product (Example 18) (0.47 g, 94%) as a pale yellow solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{46}\text{N}_6\text{O}_3\text{Cl}_2$ ; 64.06 C, 6.68 H, 12.11 N; found 62.18 C, 6.59 H, 11.78 N; ISMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 621.

## Example 2-31

Preparation 470

To a suspension of 5% palladium on carbon (2.60 g) and  
5 tetrahydrofuran (100 mL), in a Parr reaction bottle, was  
added the product of Preparation 11 (5.00 g, 15.3 mmol) as a  
solid. The reaction bottle was placed on a Parr shaker, and  
shaken at room temperature for 2 h under a hydrogen  
atmosphere (40 psi). The reaction was filtered through a  
10 pad of Celite 521 and the filtrate was then added to a  
previously prepared mixture of the product of Preparation 2  
(5.80 g, 15.3 mmol), 1,3-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (3.48 g,  
16.9 mmol) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate (2.29 g, 16.9  
mmol) in 50 mL tetrahydrofuran at 0°C. The reaction was  
15 stirred for 16 h at room temperature, then the solvent was  
evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was  
dissolved in ethyl acetate and the 1,3-dicyclohexylurea was  
filtered away. The filtrate was purified by flash  
chromatography (silica gel, 80% ethyl acetate/hexanes - 5%  
20 methanol/ethyl acetate) to give the desired product as a  
light yellow solid foam (7.96 g, 80%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR consistent  
with structure; MS (IS) m/e 682 (M + 1); Anal. Calc'd for  
C<sub>39</sub>H<sub>47</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>6</sub>: C, 68.70; H, 6.95; N, 10.27. Found: C, 68.27; H,  
6.86; N, 10.77.

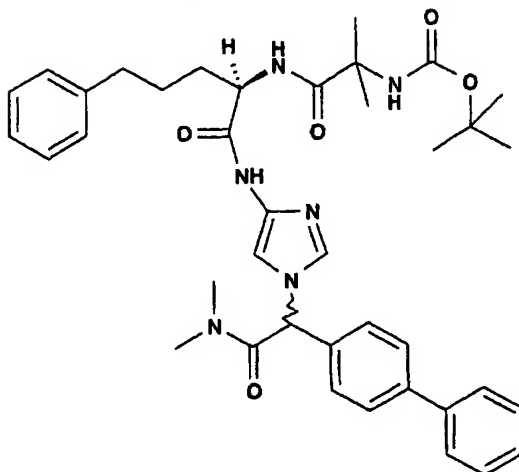
-159-

Preparation 471

To a solution of the product of Preparation 470 (8.73  
5 g, 13.3 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (120 mL) and water (60 mL)  
at room temperature was added lithium hydroxide (2.23 g,  
53.2 mmol). The reaction stirred 35 min at room  
temperature, at which time the tetrahydrofuran was  
evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was diluted  
10 with water and extracted with diethyl ether (the ether  
extracts were discarded). The aqueous layer was acidified  
(pH 2-3) with 1N HCl and then extracted with diethyl ether  
and ethyl acetate. The combined organic layers were washed  
with brine, dried (sodium sulfate) and concentrated under  
15 reduced pressure to provide the desired product as a light  
yellow solid foam that was used without further purification  
(8.18 g, 98%):  $^1\text{H}$  NMR consistent with structure; MS (IS)  
 $m/e$  654 ( $M + 1$ ); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{43}\text{N}_5\text{O}_6$ : C, 67.98; H,  
6.63; N, 10.71. Found: C, 66.83; H, 6.59; N, 10.50.

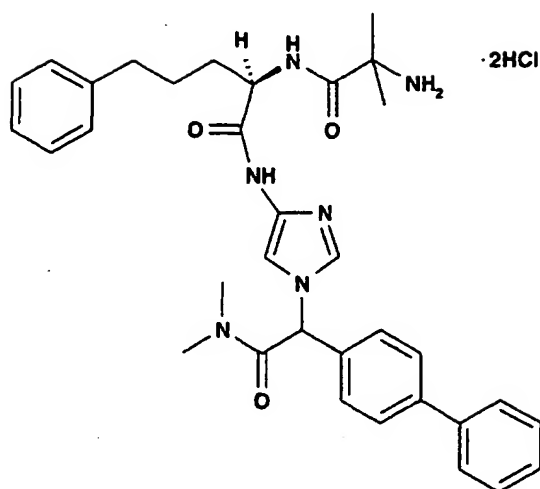
20

-160-

Preparation 472

To a solution of the product of Preparation 471 (1.00 g, 1.52 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (30 mL) at 0°C  
5 was added N-methylmorpholine (0.20 mL, 1.82 mmol) and 2-chloro-4,6-dimethoxy-1,3,5-triazine (0.35 g, 1.98 mmol). This mixture stirred for 1 h, warming to room temperature, at which time a 2M solution of N,N-dimethylamine (0.84 mL, 1.68 mmol) was added. The reaction stirred for 2 h at room  
10 temperature, then more 2-chloro-4,6-dimethoxy-1,3,5-triazine (0.08 g) was added. The reaction was stirred for another 1 h and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate, the solids were filtered away and the filtrate was purified by flash  
15 chromatography (silica gel, 90% ethyl acetate/hexanes - 10% methanol/ethyl acetate) to give the desired product as a light yellow solid foam (0.83 g, 80%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR consistent with structure; MS (IS) m/e 681 (M + 1); Anal. Calc'd for C<sub>39</sub>H<sub>48</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>5</sub>: C, 68.80; H, 7.11; N, 12.34. Found: C, 68.23; H,  
20 7.03; N, 12.66.

-161-

Compound 43

To a stirring solution of the product of Preparation 472 (3.10 g, 4.52 mmol) and anisole (0.52 mL, 4.75 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (100 mL) at 0°C was added trifluoroacetic acid (10 mL) via syringe. The reaction was stirred for 4 h warming to room temperature and then was quenched by pouring over ice-cooled saturated sodium bicarbonate. The organic layer was collected and the aqueous layer was extracted twice with dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were washed with sodium bicarbonate, water and brine, then dried (sodium sulfate) and evaporated in vacuo to give an light yellow solid foam. The impure foam was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 5% methanol/ethyl acetate - 5% triethylamine/10% methanol/ethyl acetate) to provide the desired product as an off-white solid foam (2.40 g, 91%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR consistent with structure; MS (IS) m/e 581 (M + 1); Anal. Calc'd for C<sub>34</sub>H<sub>40</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>3</sub>: C, 70.32; H, 6.94; N, 14.47. Found: C, 69.36; H, 6.71; N, 14.10.

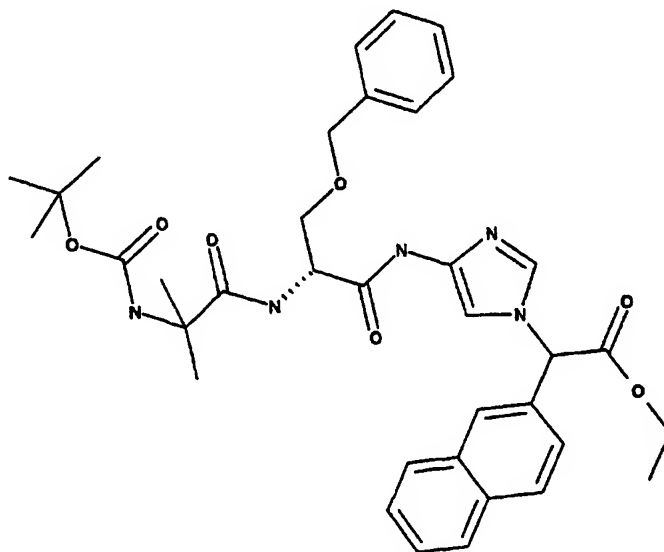
Diastereomeric separation: the desired product was resolved by HPLC [Kromasil packing material, 15% 3A alcohol/ 85% heptane (w/ 0.2% DMEA)] to provide two diastereomers. The second diastereomer (0.76 g) (retention time = 9.98 min) was

-162-

dissolved in ethyl acetate (15 mL) and then a saturated solution of hydrochloric acid in diethyl ether (2 mL) was added, with stirring. The white precipitate was collected by vacuum filtration and rinsed with diethyl ether. Vacuum drying provided Example 253 (0.70 g) as a white amorphous solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR consistent with structure; MS (IS)  $m/e$  581 ( $M + 1$ ); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{34}\text{H}_{40}\text{N}_6\text{O}_3 \cdot \text{HCl}$ : C, 66.18; H, 6.70; N, 13.62. Found: C, 64.39; H, 6.69; N, 13.19.

10

## Example 2-32

Preparation 137

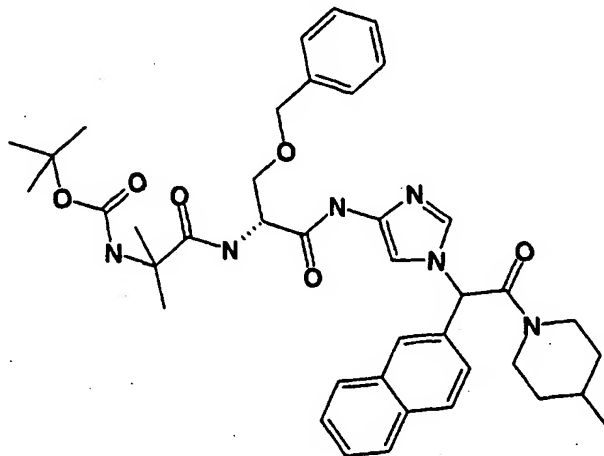
Reaction of the product of Preparation 136 (4.80 g, 14.77 mmol) with 5% palladium on carbon (2.5 g) in tetrahydrofuran (100 mL) under a hydrogen atmosphere followed by coupling with the product of Preparation 1 (5.61 g, 14.77 mmol), EDCI (2.79 g, 16.25 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (2.00 g, 14.77 mmol), and N-methylmorpholine (1.6 mL, 14.77 mmol) as described in Preparation 5A gave (6.04 g, 62%) of the desired product as a light orange foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent



-163-

with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $C_{36}H_{43}N_5O_7$ ; 65.74 C, 6.59 H, 10.65 N; found 64.02 C, 6.09 H, 10.13 N; ISMS ( $M^+$ ) - 658.

Preparation 138



5

A solution of lithium hydroxide (0.38 g, 9.16 mmol) in water (50 mL) was added to a solution of the product of Preparation 137 (6.04 g, 9.16 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (100 mL). After 30 min, water was added and the mixture washed with diethyl ether. The aqueous layer was adjusted to pH = 3.0 with sodium bisulfate, saturated with sodium chloride, and washed with ethyl acetate. The combined organic extracts were dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated.

15 To the resulting crude material stirring at room temperature in dimethylformamide (50 mL) was added 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (2.08 g, 10.01 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (1.24 g, 9.16 mmol) and 4-methylpiperidine (1.1 mL, 9.16 mmol). After 18 h, the

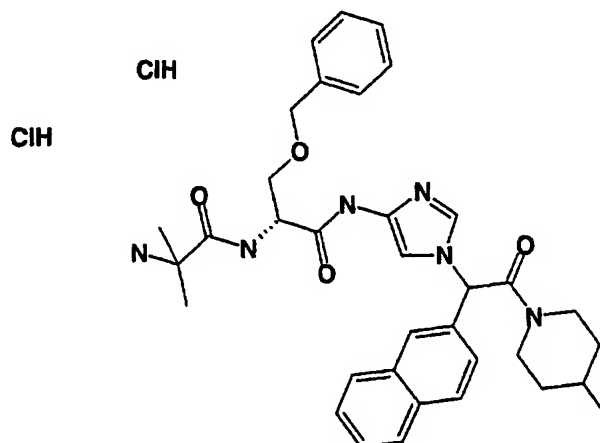
20 reaction was quenched with saturated bicarbonate, and washed with ethyl acetate. The combined organic extracts were washed with brine, dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated. The crude material was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 5% methanol/dichloromethane) to

25 yield 4.9 g (75 %) of the desired product as a pale yellow

-164-

foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure;  
Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{40}\text{H}_{50}\text{N}_6\text{O}_6$ ; 67.58 C, 7.09 H, 11.82 N; found  
65.60 C, 7.09 H, 11.50 N; ISMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 711.

5

Compounds 44 and 45

To a solution of the product of Preparation 138 (4.90 g, 6.89 mmol) stirring at room temperature in dichloromethane (40 mL) and anisole (1.0 mL) was added to  
10 trifluoroacetic acid (10 mL). After 3 hours, the reaction was quenched with saturated sodium bicarbonate and extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined organic extracts were washed with brine, dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated. The resulting crude material was purified by  
15 flash chromatography (silica gel, 5% methanol/dichloromethane) to give the product as a mixture of diastereomers. This material was resolved by HPLC (Kromsil CHI-DMP chiral stationary phase, 3A alcohol/dimethylethylamine/heptane eluant) to provide the free amine  
20 of the desired products. The individual diastereomers were dissolved in ethyl acetate and treated with a saturated solution of hydrochloric acid in diethyl ether. The resulting precipitate was filtered to yield the desired products (426779 - 0.64 g, 14%) (426780 - 0.43 g, 9%) as tan  
25 solids:

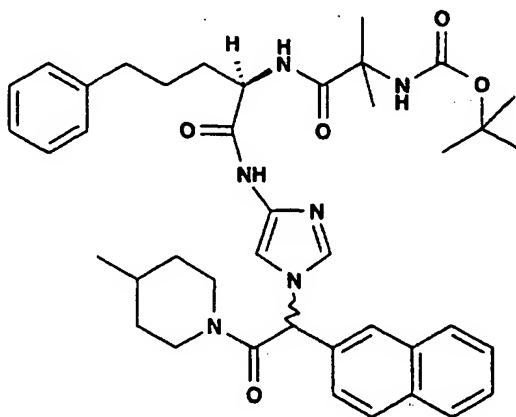
-165-

**Compound 44**  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{35}\text{H}_{44}\text{N}_6\text{O}_4\text{Cl}_2$ ; 61.49 C, 6.49 H, 12.29 N; found 60.28 C, 6.38 H, 11.74 N; ISMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 611.

**Compound 45**  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{35}\text{H}_{44}\text{N}_6\text{O}_4\text{Cl}_2$ ; 61.49 C, 6.49 H, 12.29 N; found 47.81 C, 5.29 H, 9.83 N; ISMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 611.

## Example 2-33

10

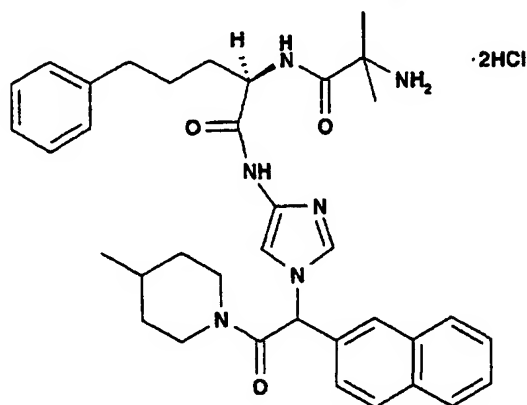
Preparation 468

To a solution of the product of Preparation 467 (2.90 g, 4.61 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (40 mL) at  $0^\circ\text{C}$  was added N-methylmorpholine (0.61 mL, 5.53 mmol) and 2-chloro-4,6-dimethoxy-1,3,5-triazine (1.05 g, 5.99 mmol). This mixture stirred for 1 h, warming to room temperature, at which time 4-methylpiperidine (0.60 mL, 5.07 mmol) was added. The reaction stirred for 2 h at room temperature, then more 2-chloro-4,6-dimethoxy-1,3,5-triazine (0.20 g) was added. The reaction was stirred for another 1 h and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate, the solids were filtered away and the filtrate was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, ethyl acetate - 10% methanol/ethyl acetate) to give the desired product as a light yellow solid foam (2.99

-166-

g, 92%):  $^1\text{H}$  NMR consistent with structure; MS (IS)  $m/e$  709 ( $M + 1$ ); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{41}\text{H}_{52}\text{N}_6\text{O}_5$ : C, 69.47; H, 7.39; N, 11.85. Found: C, 69.30; H, 7.47; N, 11.92.

5

Compounds 46 and 47

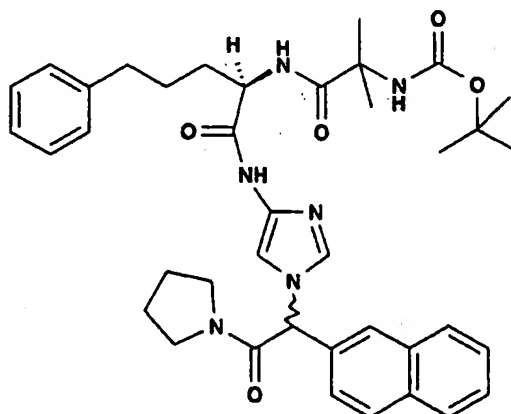
To a stirring solution of the product of Preparation 468 (4.40 g, 6.20 mmol) and anisole (0.71 mL, 6.50 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (140 mL) at 0°C was added  
10 trifluoroacetic acid (14 mL) via syringe. The reaction was stirred for 4 h warming to room temperature and then was quenched by pouring over ice-cooled saturated sodium bicarbonate. The organic layer was collected and the aqueous layer was extracted twice with dichloromethane. The  
15 combined organic layers were washed with sodium bicarbonate, water and brine, then dried (sodium sulfate) and evaporated in vacuo to give an light yellow solid foam. The impure foam was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 5% methanol/ethyl acetate- 5% triethylamine/10% methanol/ethyl  
20 acetate) to provide the desired product as a light yellow solid foam (3.75 g, 99%).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR consistent with structure; MS (IS)  $m/e$  609 ( $M + 1$ ); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{36}\text{H}_{44}\text{N}_6\text{O}_3$ : C, 71.03; H, 7.29; N, 13.80. Found: C, 69.83; H, 7.17; N, 13.54.

-167-

Diastereomeric separation: the desired product was resolved by HPLC [Kromasil packing material, 15% 3A alcohol/ 85% heptane (w/ 0.2% DMEA)] to provide two diastereomers. The first diastereomer (1.30 g) (retention time = 6.77 min) was dissolved in ethyl acetate (20 mL) and then a saturated solution of hydrochloric acid in diethyl ether (3 mL) was added, with stirring. The white precipitate was collected by vacuum filtration and rinsed with diethyl ether. Vacuum drying provided Example 249 (1.10 g) as a white amorphous solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR consistent with structure; MS (IS)  $m/e$  609 ( $M + 1$ ); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{36}\text{H}_{44}\text{N}_6\text{O}_3 \cdot \text{HCl}$ : C, 67.02; H, 7.03; N, 13.03. Found: C, 66.53; H, 6.96; N, 12.80. The second diastereomer (1.50 g) (retention time = 9.17 min) was dissolved in ethyl acetate (20 mL) and then a saturated solution of hydrochloric acid in diethyl ether (3 mL) was added, with stirring. The white precipitate was collected by vacuum filtration and rinsed with diethyl ether. Vacuum drying provided Example 250 (1.47 g) as a white amorphous solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR consistent with structure; MS (IS)  $m/e$  609 ( $M + 1$ ); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{36}\text{H}_{44}\text{N}_6\text{O}_3 \cdot \text{HCl}$ : C, 67.02; H, 7.03; N, 13.03. Found: C, 66.08; H, 6.95; N, 12.71.

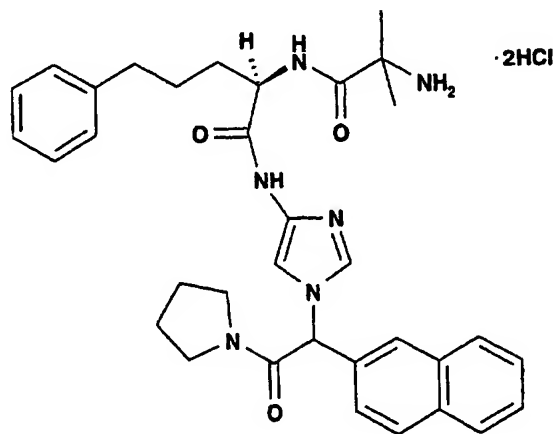
### Example 2-34

### Preparation 469



-168-

To a solution of the product of Preparation 467 (5.10 g, 8.11 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (75 mL) at 0°C was added N-methylmorpholine (1.07 mL, 9.73 mmol) and 2-chloro-4,6-dimethoxy-1,3,5-triazine (1.85 g, 10.5 mmol). This mixture stirred for 1 h, warming to room temperature, at which time pyrrolidine (0.75 mL, 8.93 mmol) was added. The reaction stirred for 2 h at room temperature, then more 2-chloro-4,6-dimethoxy-1,3,5-triazine (0.20 g) was added. The reaction was stirred for another 1 h and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate, the solids were filtered away and the filtrate was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, ethyl acetate - 10% methanol/ethyl acetate) to give the desired product as a light yellow solid foam (5.30 g, 96%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR consistent with structure; MS (IS) m/e 681 (M + 1); Anal. Calc'd for C<sub>39</sub>H<sub>48</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>5</sub>: C, 68.80; H, 7.11; N, 12.34. Found: C, 68.07; H, 7.10; N, 12.85.

Compounds 48 and 49

20

To a stirring solution of the product of Preparation 469 (5.15 g, 7.55 mmol) and anisole (0.86 mL, 7.93 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (150 mL) at 0°C was added trifluoroacetic acid (15 mL) via syringe. The reaction was stirred for 4 h warming to room temperature and then was

25

-169-

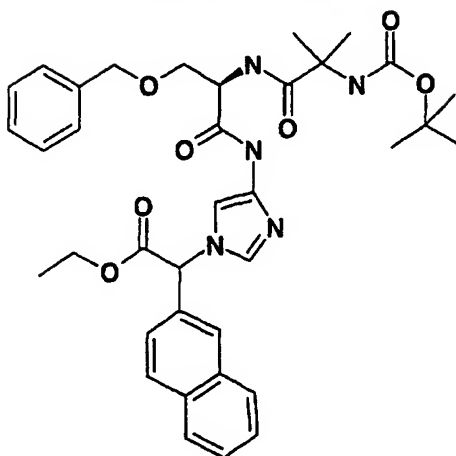
quenched by pouring over ice-cooled saturated sodium bicarbonate. The organic layer was collected and the aqueous layer was extracted twice with dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were washed with sodium bicarbonate, water and brine, then dried (sodium sulfate) and evaporated in vacuo to give an light yellow solid foam. The impure foam was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 5% methanol/ethyl acetate - 5% triethylamine/10% methanol/ethyl acetate) to provide the desired product as an off-white solid foam (4.11 g, 94%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR consistent with structure; MS (IS) m/e 581 (M + 1); Anal. Calc'd for C<sub>34</sub>H<sub>40</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>3</sub>: C, 70.32; H, 6.94; N, 14.47. Found: C, 70.34; H, 6.79; N, 13.70.

Diastereomeric separation: the desired product was resolved by HPLC [Kromasil packing material, 15% 3A alcohol/85% heptane (w/ 0.2% DMEA)] to provide two diastereomers. The first diastereomer (1.70 g) (retention time = 7.72 min) was dissolved in ethyl acetate (20 mL) and then a saturated solution of hydrochloric acid in diethyl ether (3 mL) was added, with stirring. The white precipitate was collected by vacuum filtration and rinsed with diethyl ether. Vacuum drying provided Example 251 (1.27 g) as a off-white amorphous solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR consistent with structure; MS (IS) m/e 581 (M + 1); Anal. Calc'd for C<sub>34</sub>H<sub>40</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>3</sub>·2HCl: C, 66.17; H, 6.70; N, 13.62. Found: C, 65.65; H, 6.90; N, 13.48. The second diastereomer (1.40 g) (retention time = 10.81) was dissolved in ethyl acetate (20 mL) and then a saturated solution of hydrochloric acid in diethyl ether (3 mL) was added, with stirring. The white precipitate was collected by vacuum filtration and rinsed with diethyl ether. Vacuum drying provided Example 252 (1.47 g) as a off-white amorphous solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR consistent with structure; MS (IS) m/e 581 (M + 1); Anal. Calc'd for C<sub>34</sub>H<sub>40</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>3</sub>·2HCl: C, 66.17; H, 6.70; N, 13.62. Found: C, 65.73; H, 7.03; N, 13.31.

-170-

## Example 2-35

5

Preparation 142

Reaction of the product of Preparation 136 (8.7 g, 27 mmol) with 10% palladium on carbon (4.0 g) under a hydrogen atmosphere followed by coupling with the product of

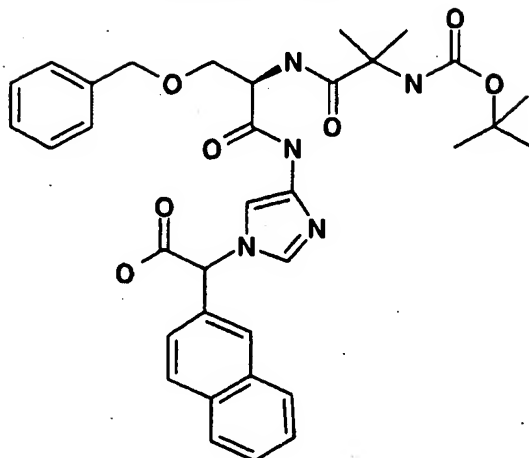
10 Preparation 1 (10.14 g, 26.7 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (4.49 g, 29.3 mmol), and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (6.05 g, 29.3 mmol) as described in Preparation 5A gave 5.4 g (31 %) of the title compound as a tan solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{d}^6$ -DMSO, d): 1.26(t,  $J = 7.4\text{Hz}$ , 3H),

15 1.40(s, 9H), 1.55(m, 6H), 3.55(m, 1H), 4.02(s, 1H), 4.25(m, 2H), 4.50(dd,  $J = 10.0\text{Hz}$ , 2H), 4.86(s, 1H), 5.92(s, 1H), 7.02(d,  $J = 7.0\text{Hz}$ , 1H), 7.22(m, 8H), 7.33(m, 3H), 7.41(s, 1H), 7.49(m, 1H), 7.80(m, 2H), 9.22(bs, 1H). Ion spray MS ( $\text{M}^+ + 1$ ): 658. Anal. ( $\text{C}_{36}\text{H}_{43}\text{N}_5\text{O}_7$ ): C, H, N.

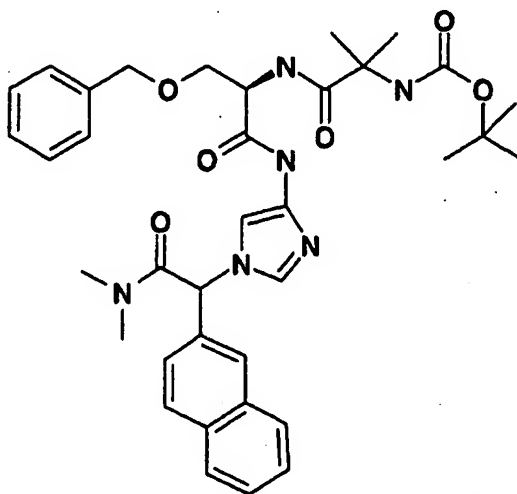
20



-171-

Preparation 143

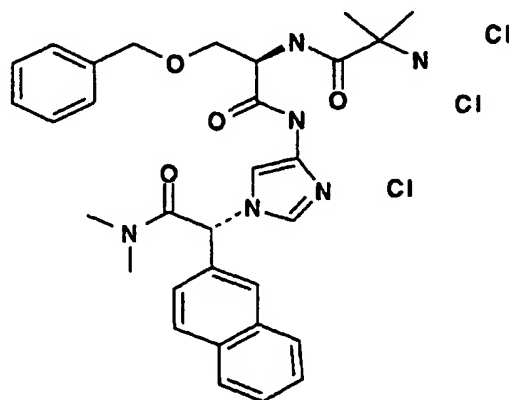
Reaction of the product of Preparation 142 (5.39 g, 8.19 mmol) with lithium hydroxide (361 mg, 8.60 mmol) in  
5 dioxane (120 mL) and water (75 mL) as described in Preparation 5 gave 4.92 g (95 %) of the title compound as a golden yellow solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $d^6$ -DMSO, d): 1.28 (m, 15H), 3.57(m, 1H), 3.66(m, 1H), 4.43(s, 2H), 4.48(d,  $J$  = 5.3Hz, 1H), 4.56(bs, 1H), 5.75(bs, 1H), 7.13(bs, 1H), 7.26(m, 6H),  
10 7.31(d,  $J$  = 6.0Hz, 2H), 7.40(m, 1H), 7.45(m, 2H), 7.65(s, 1H), 7.83(m, 3H), 10.10(bs, 1H). Ion spray MS ( $M^+$  +1): 630.

Preparation 144

-172-

Reaction of the product of Preparation 143 (4.88 g, 7.75 mmol), dimethylamine (4.2 mL, 8.53 mmol, 2.0M in tetrahydrofuran), 1-hydroxy-7-azabenzotriazole (1.16 g, 8.53 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (1.76 g, 8.53 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (120 mL) as described in Preparation EX4A gave 2.06 g (40 %) of the title compound as a yellow foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{d}^6$ -DMSO, d): 1.28(m, 15H), 2.92(s, 3H), 2.95(s, 3H), 3.60(m, 1H), 4.43(d,  $J = 4.5\text{Hz}$ ), 4.57(bs, 1H), 6.83(s, 1H), 7.24(m, 8H), 7.39(m, 1H), 7.50(m, 1H), 7.56(m, 2H), 7.88(s, 1H), 7.96(m, 3H). Ion spray MS ( $\text{M}^+ + 1$ ): 657 Anal. ( $\text{C}_{36}\text{H}_{44}\text{N}_6\text{O}_4$ ): H,N;C: calc'd 65.84; found 63.70.

15

Compound 50

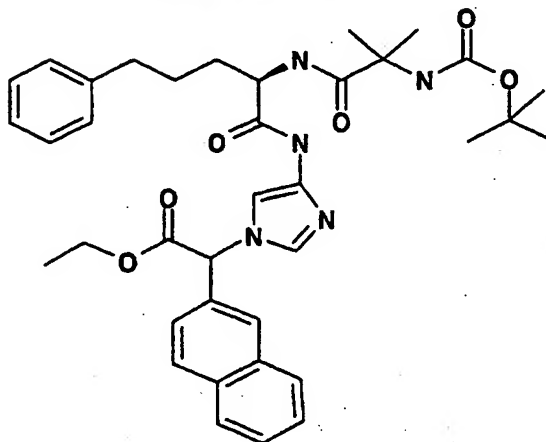
To a solution of glacial acetic acid saturated with dry hydrochloric acid (50 mL, ~3N in hydrochloric acid) stirring at room temperature was added the product of Preparation 144 (1.87 g, 2.85 mmol). After 2h, the solution was concentrated, washed with aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution, dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated. The resulting crude material was purified by HPLC (Column) to give 0.5 g of the desired isomer which was dissolved in

-173-

ethyl acetate and added dropwise to a stirred solution of anhydrous diethyl ether saturated with hydrochloric acid. The resulting white precipitate was collected by filtration and dried to give 474 mg (79 %) white solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{d}^6$ -DMSO, d): 1.47(m, 6H), 2.90(s, 3H), 2.95(s, 3H), 3.65(dd,  $J$  = 9Hz, 2H), 4.49(d,  $J$  = 7.9Hz, 2H), 4.73(m, 1H), 6.93(s, 1H), 7.18(s, 1H), 7.26(m, 6H), 7.49(d,  $J$  = 8.7Hz, 1H), 7.60(m, 2H), 7.84(d,  $J$  = 10.5Hz, 1H), 7.98(m, 3H), 8.14(d,  $J$  = 9.4Hz, 2H), 8.45(d,  $J$  = 6.8Hz, 1H), 10.74(bs, 1H). FAB+ exact MS ( $\text{M}^+ + 1$ ): 557.2876 calculated, 557.2873 found Anal. ( $\text{C}_{31}\text{H}_{39}\text{N}_6\text{O}_4\text{Cl}_3$ ): H, N; C: calc'd, 56.01; found, 56.72.

15

## Example 2-36

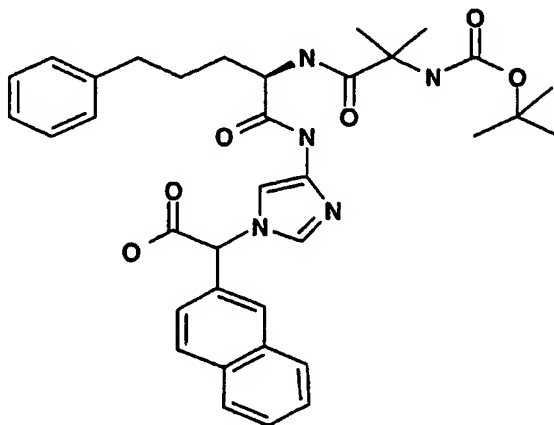
Preparation 139

Reaction of the product of Preparation 136 (1.31g, 4.02 mmol) with 10% palladium on carbon (0.5 g) in tetrahydrofuran (50 mL) under a hydrogen atmosphere followed by coupling with the product of Preparation 2 (1.52g, 4.02 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.68g, 4.42 mmol), and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (0.91g, 4.42 mmol) as described in Preparation 5A to give 1.06 g (38 %) of the

-174-

title compound as a tan solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{d}^6$ -DMSO, d): 1.22(m, 18H), 1.50(m, 4H), 2.55(m, 2H), 4.26(q,  $J = 9.0\text{Hz}$ , 2H), 4.37(bs, 1H), 5.75(s, 1H), 6.60(s, 1H), 7.02(bs, 1H), 7.16(m, 3H), 7.22(m, 3H), 7.43(m, 1H), 7.50(d,  $J = 9.3\text{Hz}$ , 2H), 7.60(m, 2H), 7.97(m, 3H), 10.21(m, 1H). Ion spray MS ( $\text{M}^+ + 1$ ): 656.

Preparation 140



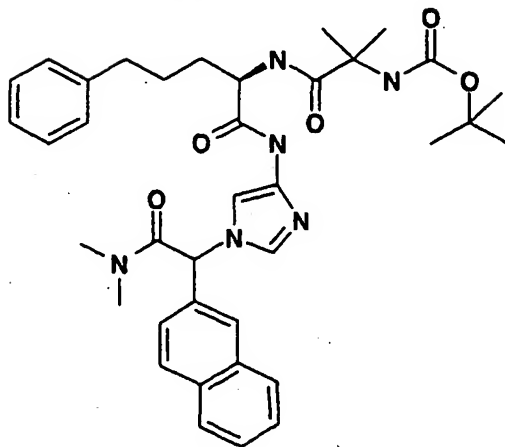
10

Reaction of the product of Preparation 139 (1.06 g, 1.62 mmol) with lithium hydroxide 75 mg, 1.78 mmol) in dioxane (30 mL) and water (15 mL) as described in Preparation 5 gave 1.01 g (100 %) of the title compound as a golden yellow solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{d}^6$ -DMSO, d): 1.20(m, 15H), 1.50(m, 4H), 2.55(m, 2H), 4.38(bs, 1H), 6.58(s, 1H), 7.02(bs, 1H), 7.17(m, 3H), 7.25(m, 3H), 7.35(m, 1H), 7.50(m, 2H), 7.58(m, 2H), 7.98(m, 3H), 8.09(m, 1H), 10.36(bs, 1H). Ion spray MS ( $\text{M}^+ + 1$ ): 628.

20

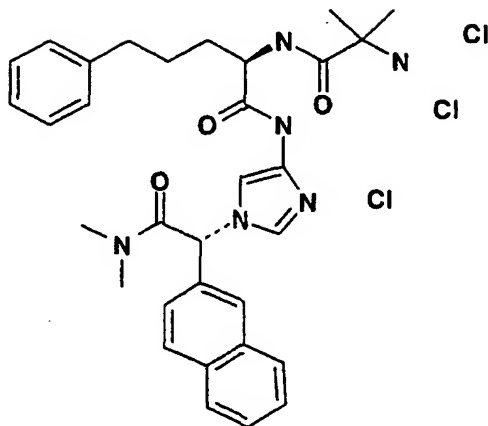
-175-

### Preparation 141



To a solution of the product of Preparation 140 (500  
5 mg, 0.80 mmol) dimethylamine·hydrochloric acid (72 mg, 0.88  
mmol), triethylamine (0.12 mL, 0.88 mmol), 1-  
hydroxybenzotriazole (134 mg, 0.88 mmol) and 1-(3-  
dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (18 mg, 0.88 mmol)  
in dimethylformamide (20 mL) as described in Preparation  
10 EX4A gave 342 mg (66 %) of the title compound as a white  
solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (d<sup>6</sup>-DMSO, d): 1.27(m, 15H), 1.57(m, 4H),  
2.55(m, 2H), 2.90(s, 3H), 2.95(s, 3H), 4.38(bs, 1H), 6.80(s,  
1H), 7.02(bs, 1H), 7.15(m, 3H), 7.22(m, 3H), 7.35(m, 1H),  
7.47(m, 2H), 7.57(m, 2H), 7.88(s, 1H), 7.98(m, 3H),  
15 10.15(bs, 1H). Ion spray MS (M<sup>+</sup> +1): 655. Anal.  
(C<sub>37</sub>H<sub>46</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>5</sub>): H,N;C: calc'd 67.87; found 66.19.

-176-

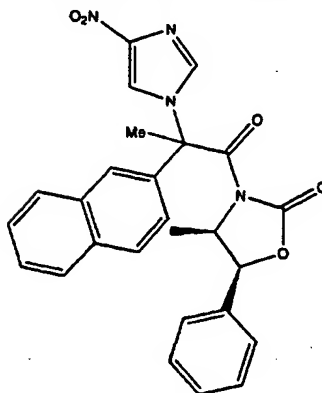
Compound 51

Reaction of the product of Preparation 141 (333 mg, 0.51 mmol) with trifluoroacetic acid (5 mL) in dichloromethane (17 mL) as described in Example 2-7 gave 52 mg (65 %) of a tan solid which was purified by HPLC (Kromasil CHI-DMP chiral stationary phase, 3A alcohol/dimethylethylamine/heptane eluant) to give the free amine which was acidified with hydrochloric acid to provide the desired product:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{d}^6$ -DMSO, d): 1.21(m, 6H), 1.57(m, 4H), 2.54(m, 2H), 2.90(s, 3H), 2.95(s, 3H), 4.41(bs, 1H), 6.82(s, 1H), 7.02(bs, 1H), 7.14(m, 3H), 7.24(m, 3H), 7.48(m, 2H), 7.57(m, 2H), 7.87(s, 1H), 7.97(m, 3H), 8.12(bs, 1H), 10.40(s, 1H). FAB+ exact MS ( $\text{M}^+ + 1$ ): 555.3084 calc'd, 555.3079 found Anal. ( $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{41}\text{N}_6\text{O}_3\text{Cl}_3$ ): C, H, N.

-177-

Example 2-37

## Preparation EX20A



5

Prepared as in Preparation 6B using the product of Preparation 13B (10.9 g, 32.27 mmol) in THF (150 mL) and lithium hydroxide (1.63 g, 38.73 mmol) in water (75 mL) to give the crude acid. The resulting crude solid was

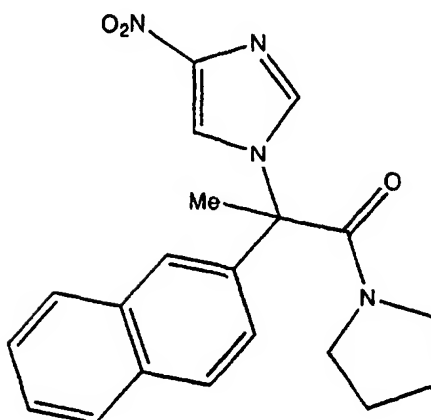
10 dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (150 mL) and reacted with catalytic DMF (0.5 mL) and excess oxalyl chloride (23 mL). The resulting crude foam was dissolved in THF (50 mL) and reacted with n-BuLi (1.6M in hexanes, 30.1 mL, 48.23 mmol), (4R, 5S)-(+)-4-methyl-5-phenyl-2-oxazolidinone (8.55

15 g, 48.23 mmol), and THF (150 mL) to yield diastereomer 1 (6.13 g, 41% yield) and diastereomer 2 (4.82 g, 32%) of the desired product (Preparation EX20A), as follows, as colorless foams: diastereomer 1 -  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{26}\text{H}_{22}\text{N}_4\text{O}_5$ ; 66.38

20 C, 4.71 H, 11.91 N; found 65.24 C, 4.72 H, 11.59 N; ISMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 471; diastereomer 2 -  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{26}\text{H}_{22}\text{N}_4\text{O}_5$ ; 66.38 C, 4.71 H, 11.91 N; found 66.45 C, 4.77 H, 12.20 N; ISMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 471.

-178-

## Preparation EX20B



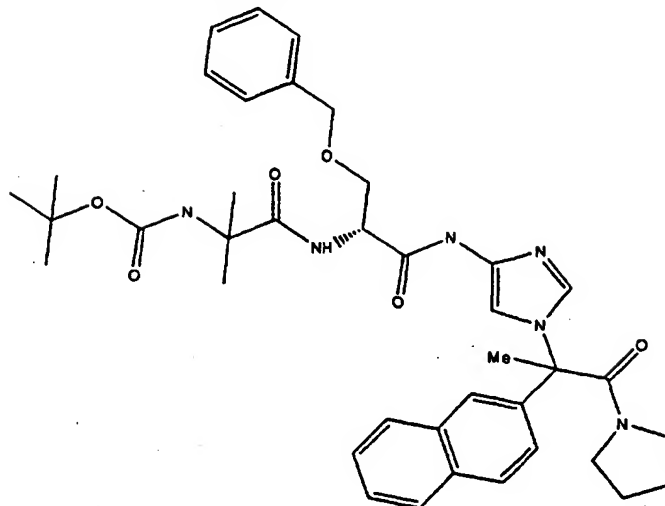
isomer 1

- 5        Prepared as in Preparation EX2A using the product of  
Preparation EX20A, diastereomer 1 (1.00 g, 2.13 mmol) in THF  
(20 mL) and lithium hydroxide (0.10 g, 2.33 mmol) in water  
(10 mL) to give the crude acid.    The resulting crude solid  
was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (20 mL) and  
10   reacted with catalytic DMF (0.1 mL) and excess oxalyl  
chloride (5 g). The resulting crude foam was dissolved in  
anhydrous dichloromethane (20 mL) and reacted with 4-  
Dimethylaminopyridine (catalytic, 10 mg) and pyrrolidine  
(0.61 mL, 6.39 mmol) to yield the desired product  
15   (Preparation 20B), as follows, (0.42 g, 54% yield) as a  
colorless foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with  
structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{20}\text{N}_4\text{O}_3$ ; 65.92 C, 5.53 H,  
15.38 N; found 61.50 C, 5.41 H, 13.91 N; ISMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 365.



-179-

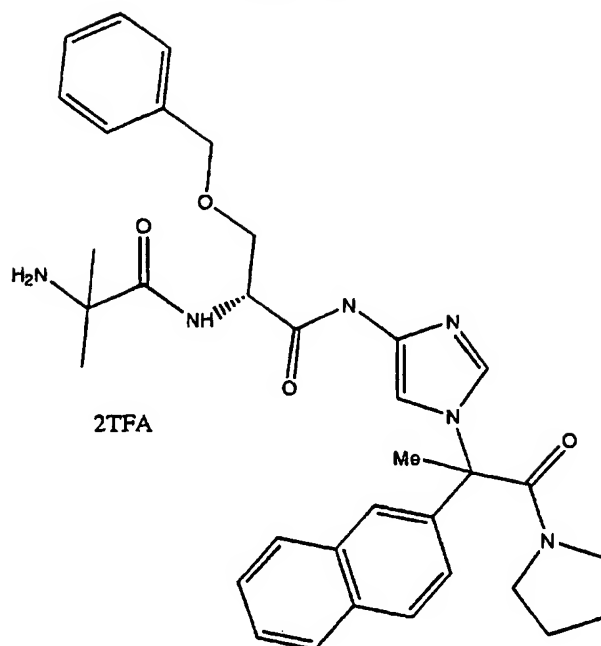
## Preparation EX20C



5

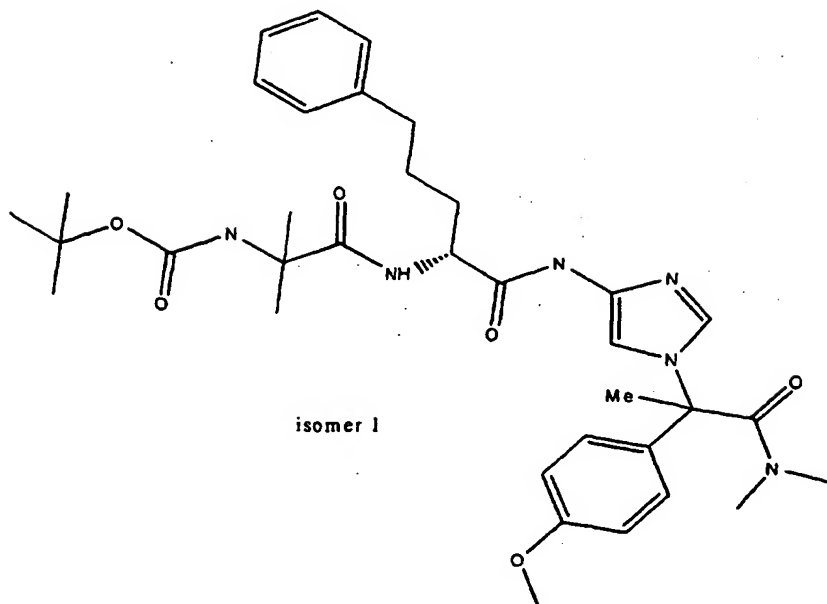
Prepared as in Preparation EX2B using the product of Preparation EX20B (0.42 g, 1.15 mmol) and 5% palladium on carbon (0.40 g, catalytic, 25 mL THF) to yield the crude amine. The filtrate was reacted with HOBT (0.16 g, 1.15 mmol), the product of Preparation 1 (0.44 g, 1.15 mmol), and DCC (0.26 g, 1.28 mmol) to yield the desired product (Preparation EX20C), as follows, (0.41 g, 51% yield) as a light yellow foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{39}\text{H}_{48}\text{N}_6\text{O}_6$ ; 67.22 C, 6.94 H, 12.06 N; found 67.66 C, 6.95 H, 11.66 N; ISMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 697.

-180-

Compound 52

Prepared as in Example Z2 using the product of  
5 Preparation EX20C (0.41 g, 0.59 mmol), trifluoroacetic acid  
(2.0 mL), anisole (0.2 mL), and dichloromethane (8.0 mL) to  
yield the desired product (Example 20) (0.48 g, 99% yield) as  
an off white solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent  
with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{38}\text{H}_{42}\text{N}_6\text{O}_8\text{F}_6$ ; 55.34 C, 5.13  
10 H, 10.19 N; found 55.60 C, 4.92 H, 9.89 N; ISMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 597.

-181-

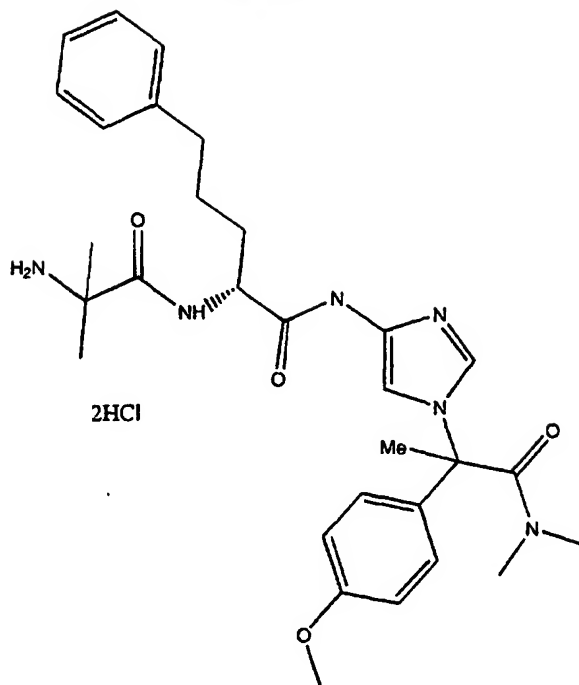
Example 2-38Preparation 44

5

Prepared as in Preparation EX2B using the product of Preparation 21 (0.27 g, 0.85 mmol) and 5% palladium on carbon (0.30 g, catalytic, 20 mL THF) to give the crude amine. The resulting filtrate was reacted with HOBT (0.11 g, 0.85 mmol), the product of Preparation 2 (0.32 g, 0.85 mmol), N-methylmorpholine (0.10 mL, 0.85 mmol), and EDCI (0.16 g, 0.93 mmol) to yield the desired product (0.70 g, 46% yield) as a light yellow foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{35}\text{H}_{48}\text{N}_6\text{O}_6$ ; 66.43 C, 7.65 H, 13.28 N; found 63.53 C, 6.83 H, 12.38 N; ISMS (M+) - 649.

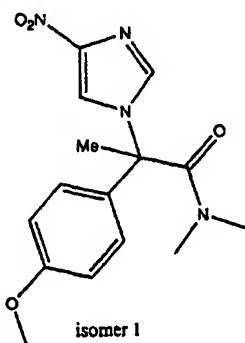
10  
15

-182-

Compound 53

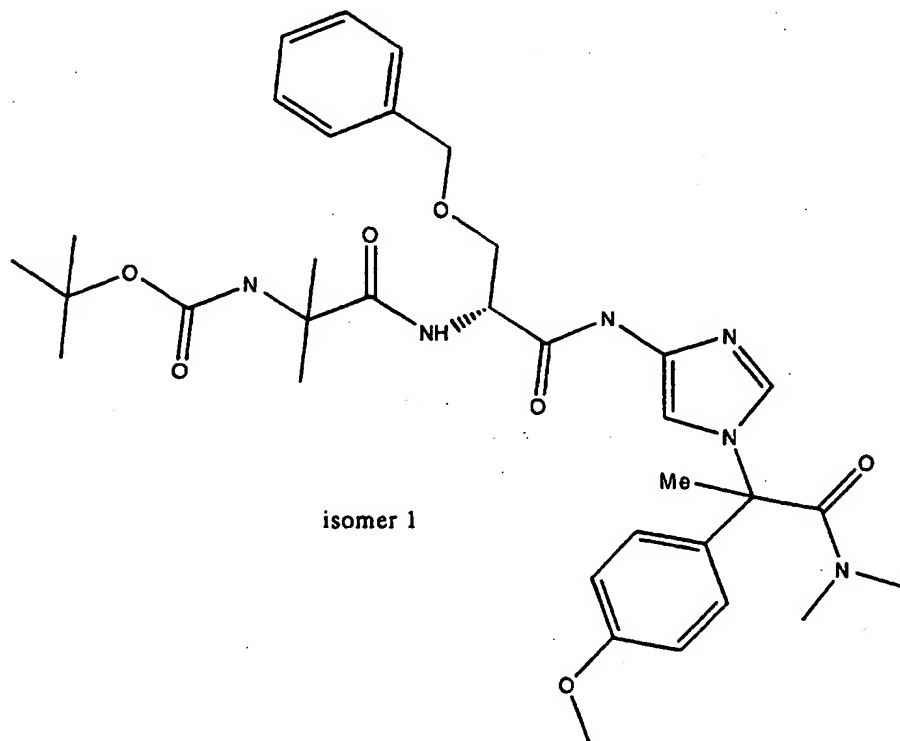
Prepared as in Example 2-7 using the product of Preparation 44 (0.19 g, 0.29 mmol), trifluoroacetic acid (4.0 mL), anisole (0.4 mL), and dichloromethane (20 mL) to yield the desired product (0.16 g, 84%) as a pale yellow solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{42}\text{N}_6\text{O}_4\text{Cl}_2$ ; 57.97 C, 6.81 H, 13.52 N; found 57.54 C, 6.36 H, 13.04 N; FDMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 549.

10

Example 2-39Preparation 21

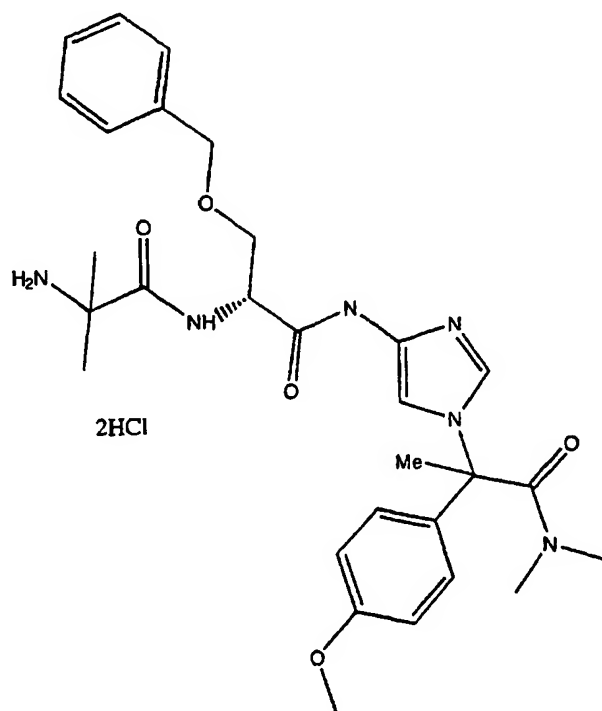
-183-

Prepared as in Preparation 17 using the product of Preparation EX9A, diastereomer 1 (2.31 g, 5.15 mmol) in THF (50 mL) and lithium hydroxide (0.26 g, 6.18 mmol) in water (25 mL) to give the crude acid. The resulting crude solid was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (50 mL) and reacted with catalytic DMF (0.1 mL) and excess oxalyl chloride (5 g) to give the crude acid chloride. The resulting crude foam was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (50 mL) and reacted with 4-Dimethylaminopyridine (catalytic, 10 mg) and dimethylamine (2.0 M in THF, 7.7 mL, 15.46 mmol) to yield the desired product (1.57 g, 96% yield) as a colorless foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{18}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4$ ; 56.60 C, 5.70 H, 17.60 N; found 57.04 C, 6.09 H, 16.82 N; ISMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 319.

Preparation 45

-184-

Prepared as in Preparation EX2B using the product of Preparation 21 (0.75 g, 2.36 mmol) and 5% palladium on carbon (0.80 g, catalytic, 25 mL THF) to give the crude amine. The resulting filtrate was reacted with HOBT (0.32 g, 2.36 mmol), the product of Preparation 1 (0.90 g, 2.36 mmol), and DCC (0.54 g, 2.60 mmol) to yield the desired product (0.86 g, 56% yield) as a light yellow foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{50}\text{N}_6\text{O}_6$ ; 62.75 C, 7.12 H, 12.91 N; found 62.65 C, 6.95 H, 12.76 N; ISMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 651.

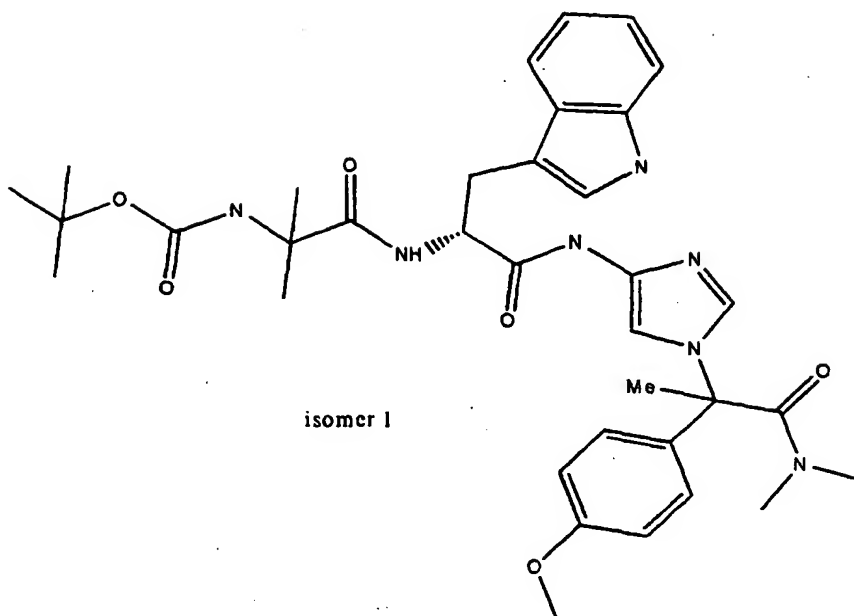
Compound 54

Prepared as in Example 2-7 using the product of Preparation 45 (0.84 g, 1.29 mmol), trifluoroacetic acid (4.0 mL), anisole (0.4 mL), and dichloromethane (20 mL) to yield the desired product (0.69 g, 86%) as a pale yellow solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure;

-185-

Anal. calc'd. for  $C_{29}H_{38}N_6O_5Cl_2$ ; 55.86 C, 6.47 H, 13.48 N;  
found 55.31 C, 6.52 H, 13.01 N; ISMS (M+) - 551.

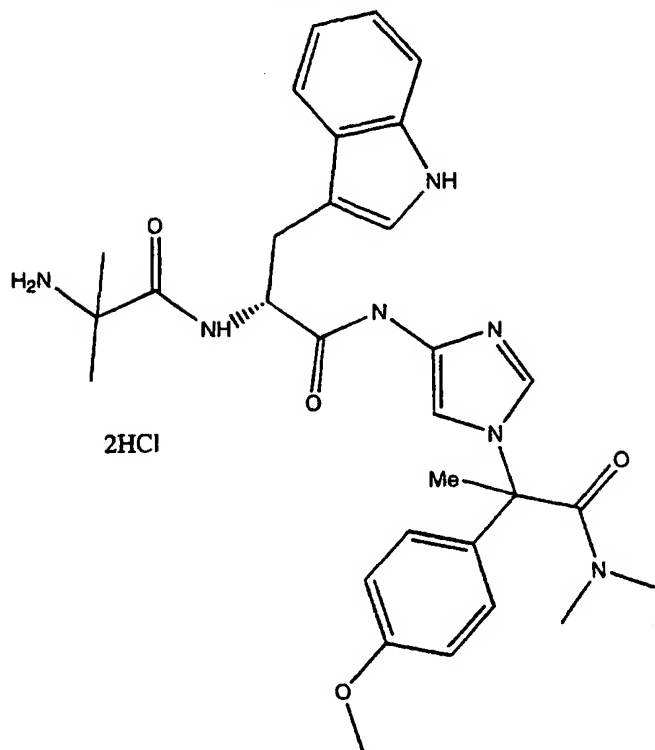
5

Example 2-40Preparation 46

10

Prepared as in Preparation EX2B using the product of Preparation 21 (0.80 g, 2.52 mmol) and 5% palladium on carbon (0.80 g, catalytic, 25 mL THF) to give the crude amine. The resulting filtrate was reacted with HOBT (0.34 g, 2.52 mmol), the product of Preparation 37 (0.99 g, 2.52 mmol), and DCC (0.57 g, 2.77 mmol) to yield the desired product (0.77 g, 46% yield) as a light yellow foam:  $^1H$  NMR (300 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $C_{37}H_{50}N_6O_6$ ; 63.72 C, 6.87 H, 14.86 N; found 63.45 C, 6.86 H, 14.76 N; ISMS (M+) - 660.

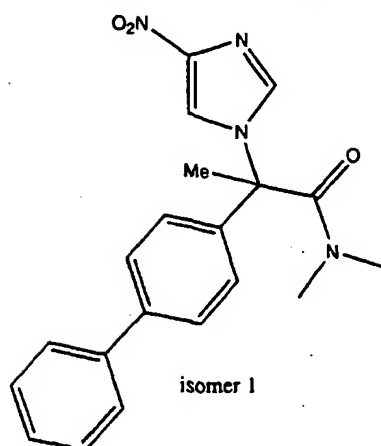
-186-

Compound 55

Prepared as in Example 2-7 using the product of Preparation 46 (0.75 g, 1.13 mmol), trifluoroacetic acid (4.0 mL), anisole (0.4 mL), and dichloromethane (20 mL) to yield the desired product (0.62 g, 87%) as a pale yellow solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>37</sub>N<sub>7</sub>O<sub>4</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>; 56.96 C, 6.21 H, 15.50 N; found 55.48 C, 6.03 H, 14.63 N; ISMS (M<sup>+</sup>) - 560.

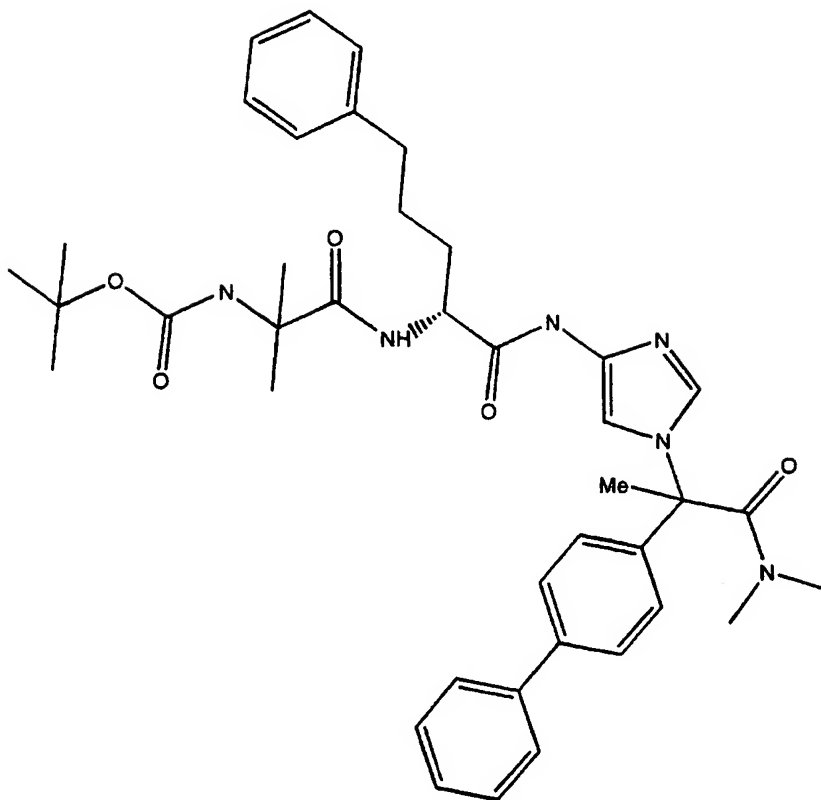


-187-

Example 2-41Preparation 24

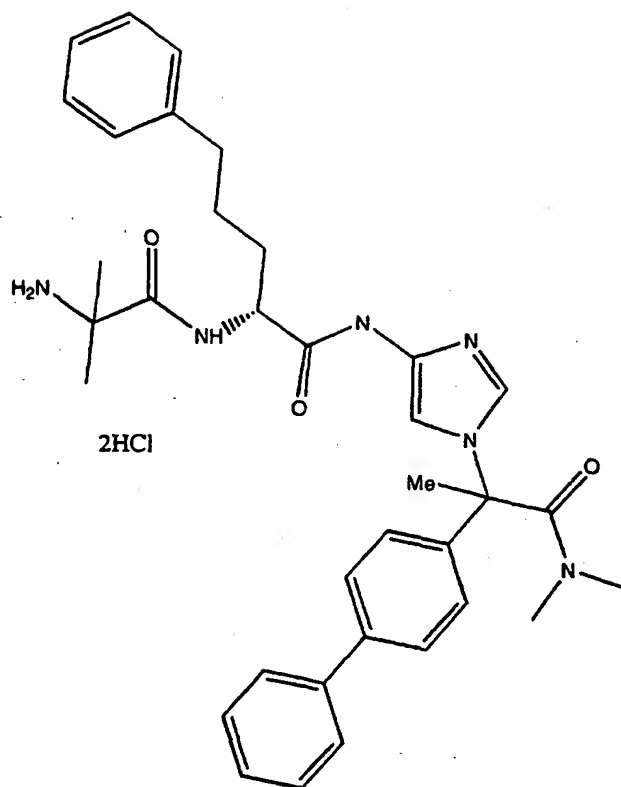
- 5        Prepared as in Preparation EX2A using the product of  
Preparation 12B, diastereomer 1 (0.50 g, 1.00 mmol) in THF  
(20 mL) and lithium hydroxide (0.05 g, 1.10 mmol) in water  
(10 mL) to give the crude acid. The resulting crude solid  
was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (50 mL) and  
10 reacted with catalytic DMF (0.1 mL) and excess oxalyl  
chloride (5 g) to give the crude acid chloride. The  
resulting crude foam was dissolved in anhydrous  
dichloromethane (50 mL) and reacted with 4-  
Dimethylaminopyridine (catalytic, 10 mg), N-methylmorpholine  
15 (0.33 mL, 3.00 mmol), and dimethylamine hydrochloride (0.13  
g, 1.50 mmol) to yield the desired product (0.30 g, 82%  
yield) as a colorless foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) -  
consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{20}\text{N}_4\text{O}_3$ ; 65.92  
C, 5.53 H, 15.37 N; found 64.17 C, 5.41 H, 14.15 N; ISMS  
20 (M+) - 365.

-188-

Preparation 50

- Prepared as in Preparation EX2B using the product of
- 5 Preparation 24 (0.30 g, 0.82 mmol) and 5% palladium on carbon (0.30 g, catalytic, 25 mL THF) to give the crude amine. The resulting filtrate was reacted with HOBT (0.11 g, 0.82 mmol), the product of Preparation 2 (0.31 g, 0.82 mmol), and DCC (0.19 g, 0.90 mmol) to yield the desired
- 10 product (0.32 g, 56% yield) as a light yellow foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{40}\text{H}_{50}\text{N}_5\text{O}_5$ ; 69.14 C, 7.25 H, 12.09 N; found 67.82 C, 7.07 H, 11.62 N; ISMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 695.

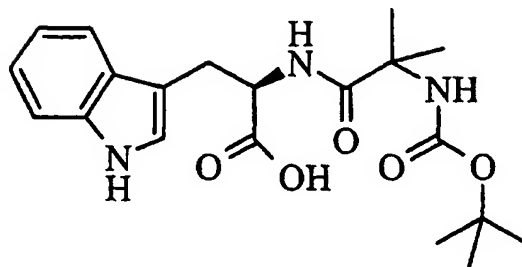
**Compound 56**



5           Prepared as in Example 2-7 using the product of  
Preparation 50 (0.32 g, mmol), trifluoroacetic acid (4.0  
mL), anisole (0.4 mL), and dichloromethane (20 mL) to yield  
the desired product (0.26 g, %) as a pale yellow solid:  $^1\text{H}$   
NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal.  
10 calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{35}\text{H}_{44}\text{N}_6\text{O}_3\text{Cl}_2$ ; 62.96 C, 6.64 H, 12.59 N; found  
60.05 C, 6.31 H, 11.98 N; FDMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 595.

Example 2-42

5

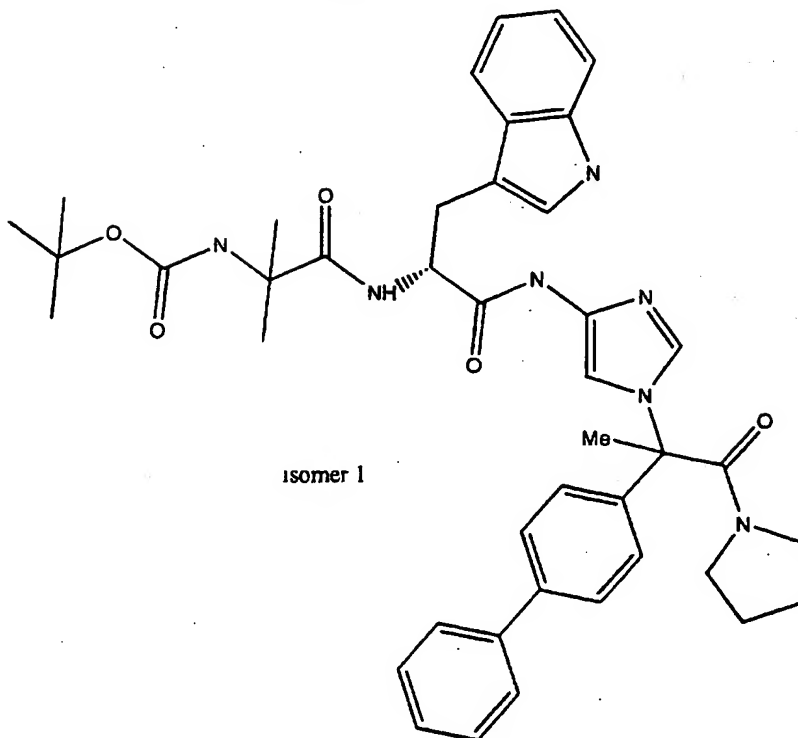
Preparation 37

*N*-Methyl morpholine (4.79 mL, 2 eq, 47.3 mm) was added to a stirred slurry of *N*-Boc- $\alpha$ -aminoisobutyric acid (4.43 g, 21.7 mm, 1 eq) and 3.89 g (21.7 mm, 1.0 eq) of 2-chloro-(4,6)-dimethoxy-1,3,5-triazine (CDMT) in 100 mL of diethyl ether. After stirring the reaction mixture at ambient temperature for 1.5 hours, D-tryptophan ester hydrochloride was added. After stirring overnight, the reaction mixture was quenched by the addition of 150 mL of 10% aqueous citric acid solution. The layers were separated and the ether layer was washed with 50 mL of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution and 50 mL of water. Lithium hydroxide (2.43 g, 5 eq) was dissolved in 100 mL of water and the solution was added to the diethyl ether solution and stirred vigorously for 4 hours at room temperature. The layers were separated and the pH of the aqueous layers was adjusted to 5.6 with 1M HCl. The pH was then adjusted to 3.95 with 10% citric acid solution and the aqueous layer was extracted with 100 mL of ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate layers were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate and filtered. The volatiles were removed under vacuum to give 82 % yield of

-191-

the desired product as a white foam.  $^1\text{H}$ -NMR consistent with structure.

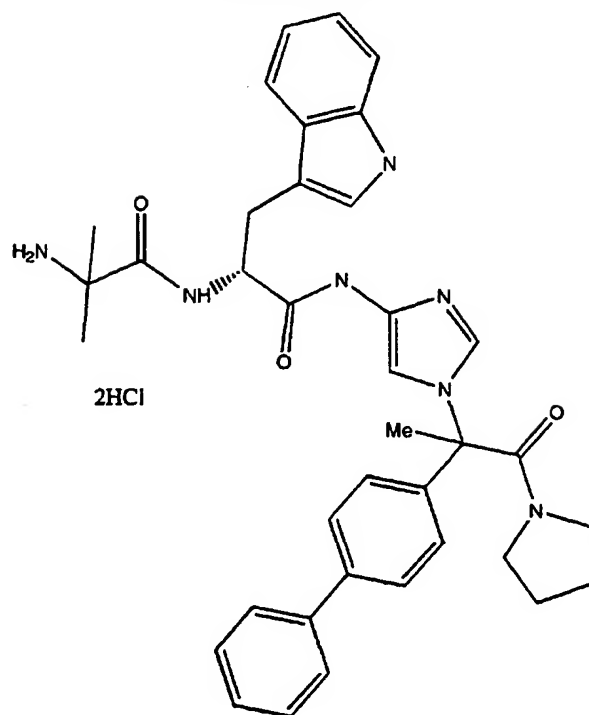
Preparation 49



5

Prepared as in Preparation EX2B using the product of Preparation EX17A (0.20 g, 0.51 mmol) and 5% palladium on carbon (0.20 g, catalytic, 25 mL THF) to give the crude amine. The resulting filtrate was reacted with HOBT (0.07 g, 0.51 mmol), the product of Preparation 37 (0.20 g, 0.51 mmol), and DCC (0.12 g, 0.51 mmol) to yield the desired product (0.17 g, 45% yield) as a light yellow foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for  $\text{C}_{42}\text{H}_{49}\text{N}_7\text{O}_6$ ; 68.93 C, 6.75 H, 13.40 N; found 67.02 C, 6.54 H, 12.71 N; ISMS ( $\text{M}^+$ ) - 732.

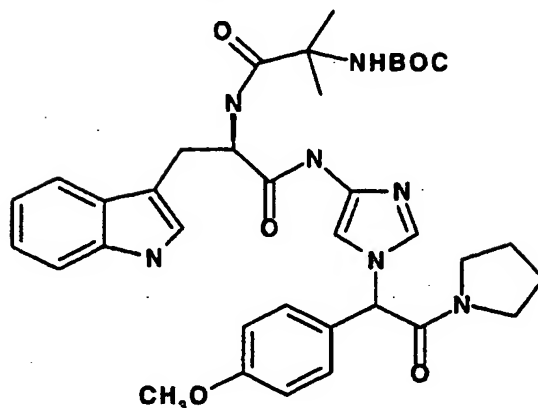
-192-

Compound 57

Prepared as in Example 2-7 using the product of Preparation 49 (0.96 g, 1.31 mmol), trifluoroacetic acid (4.0 mL), anisole (0.4 mL), and dichloromethane (20 mL) to yield the desired product (0.54 g, 59%) as a pale yellow solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) - consistent with structure; Anal. calc'd. for C<sub>37</sub>H<sub>43</sub>N<sub>7</sub>O<sub>3</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>; 63.06 C, 6.15 H, 13.91 N; found 58.22 C, 5.48 H, 12.32 N; ISMS (M<sup>+</sup>) - 632.

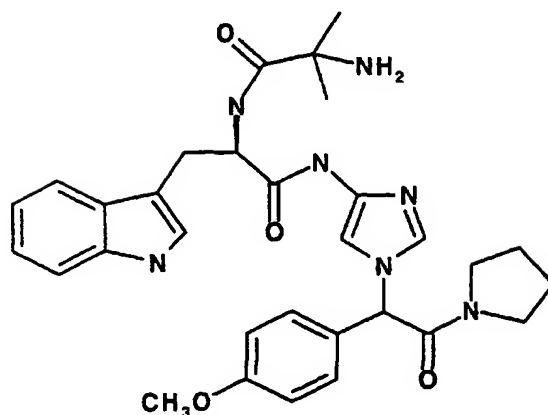
-193-

## Example 2-43

Preparation 15

5           The product of Preparation EX9A (0.85 g, 2.57 mmol)  
was combined with 10% palladium/carbon (0.50 g) and  
palladium/black (0.15 g) in tetrahydrofuran (40 mL) and  
the mixture shaken under a hydrogen atmosphere (38 psi)  
10 in a Parr apparatus. After reduction was complete, the  
catalyst was removed by filtration through celite and the  
amine/tetrahydrofuran solution was immediately combined  
with 1,3-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (0.53 g, 2.57 mmol), 1-  
hydroxybenzotriazole (0.35 g, 2.57 mmol), the product of  
15 Preparation 1L (1.00 g, 2.57 mmol) and additional  
tetrahydrofuran (60 mL). After stirring overnight at  
ambient temperature, the mixture was concentrated and the  
residue slurried in ethyl acetate and filtered. The  
filtrate was concentrated and the residue purified by  
20 flash chromatography (silica gel, chloroform/methanol)  
which gave 1.62 g of the desired product which was used  
without further purification.

-194-

Compound 58

The compound of Preparation 15 (1.57 g, 2.34 mmol) was dissolved in dichloromethane (25 mL) and trifluoroacetic acid (10 mL) added. The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 2.5 h, concentrated, and the residue treated with excess aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The aqueous mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and the combined organic extracts concentrated and dried. The residue was chromatographed over silica gel (chloroform/methanol) to provide 0.71 g (53 %) of the desired product: MS: (M+H)<sup>+</sup> 572.5. <sup>1</sup>H NMR was consistent with product. Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>37</sub>N<sub>7</sub>O<sub>4</sub>·0.35 CHCl<sub>3</sub>: C, 61.38; H, 6.14; N, 15.98. Found: C, 61.36; H, 6.11; N, 16.08. The isomeric mixture (2.16 g) was separated as previously described in Example 6 to provide 1.10 g of isomer 1 (t<sub>R</sub> = 10.34 min) and 0.80 g of isomer 2 (t<sub>R</sub> = 13.70 min). The product derived from isomer 2 (0.80 g, 1.40 mmol) was dissolved in a minimal amount of ethyl acetate and the resulting solution treated with an excess of hydrochloric acid in ethyl acetate. The solution was then concentrated to provide 0.88 g (82 %) of the desired product as an off white solid: MS: (M+H)<sup>+</sup> 572.3, 573.4. <sup>1</sup>H NMR was consistent with product. Anal.



-195-

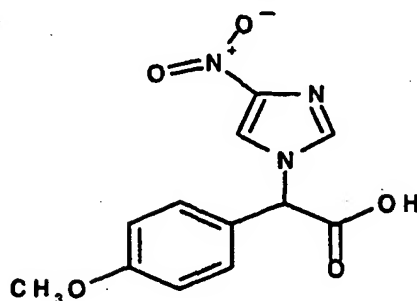
Calcd. For  $C_{31}H_{37}N_7O_4 \cdot 3.0 \text{ HCl}$ : C, 54.67; H, 5.92; N, 14.40.

Found: C, 54.25; H, 5.89; N, 13.35.

#### Example 2-44

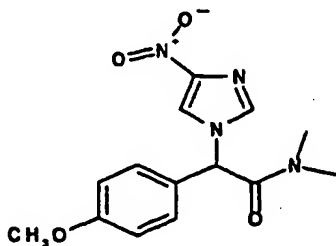
5

#### Preparation 16



- To a solution of the product of Preparation 4 (5.75 g, 18.9 mmol) stirring at room temperature in
- 10 tetrahydrofuran (10 mL) was added sodium hydroxide (25 mL of a 5 N aqueous solution) along with water (15 mL) and ethanol (10 mL). After hydrolysis was complete, the mixture was acidified to pH 2.0 with aqueous hydrochloric acid and extracted. The combined organic extracts were
- 15 dried, filtered, and concentrated to give the desired product in quantitative yield as a tan solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$  14.05-13.60 (bs, 1H), 8.34 (s, 1H) 7.90 (s, 1H), 7.45 (d, 2H,  $J = 8.67$  Hz), 7.00 (d, 2H,  $J = 8.67$  Hz), 6.42 (s, 1H), 3.77 (s, 3H). FDMS: 277 (M) $^+$  Anal.
- 20 Calcd. for  $C_{12}H_{11}N_3O_5 \cdot 0.67 \text{ H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 49.82; H, 4.30; N, 14.52. Found: C, 50.05; H, 4.01; N, 14.12.

#### Preparation 17

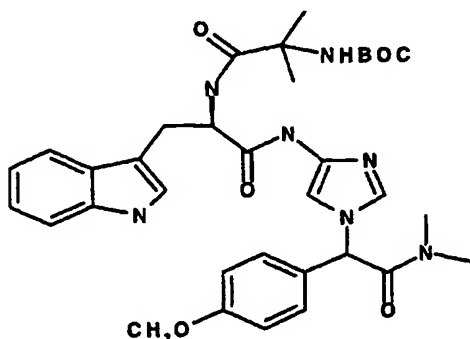


-196-

The compound of Preparation 16 (2.50 g, 9.0 mmol) was combined with aqueous dimethylamine (40%, 1.15 mL, 9.0 mmol), 1-hydroxy-benzotriazole hydrate (1.22 g, 9.0 mmol) and 1,3-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (1.86 g, 9.0 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (60 mL) and the mixture stirred at ambient temperature. After 18 h, the mixture was concentrated and the residue slurried in ethyl acetate and filtered. The filtrate was concentrated and the resulting residue purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, chloroform/methanol) to afford 1.83 g (67%) of the desired product:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{DMSO}-d_6$ )  $\delta$  8.14 (s, 1H) 7.76 (s, 1H), 7.42 (d, 2H,  $J = 8.67$  Hz), 7.00 (d, 2H,  $J = 8.67$  Hz), 6.78 (s, 1H), 3.77 (s, 3H), 2.91 (2, 3H), 2.85 (s, 3H). ESMS:  $(\text{M}+\text{H})^+$  305.2.

15

#### Preparation 19

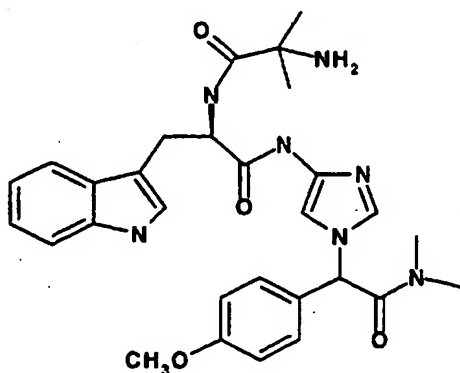


The compound of preparation 17 (0.73 g, 2.38 mmol) was combined with 10% palladium/carbon (0.50 g) and palladium/black (0.10 g) in tetrahydrofuran (40 mL) and the mixture shaken under hydrogen (38 psi) in a Parr apparatus. After reduction was complete, the catalyst was removed by filtration through celite and the resulting solution was immediately combined with dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (0.49 g, 2.38 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole mono-hydrate (0.32 g, 2.37 mmol), the product of Preparation 1L (0.93 g, 2.39 mmol) and

-197-

additional tetrahydrofuran (60 mL). After stirring overnight at ambient temperature, the mixture was concentrated and the residue slurried in ethyl acetate and filtered. The filtrate was concentrated and the residue purified by silica gel chromatography (chloroform/methanol) to provide 0.76 g (50%) of the desired product as an off white solid which was used without further purification.

10

Compound 59

To a solution of the compound of preparation 19 (0.74 g, 1.15 mmol) stirring at room temperature in dichloromethane (30 mL) was added trifluoroacetic acid (10 mL). After 2 h, the mixture was concentrated and the residue treated with excess aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The resulting mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and the combined organic extracts were concentrated. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, chloroform/methanol) to provide 0.23 g (37%) of the desired product: ESMS: (M+H)<sup>+</sup> 546.6. <sup>1</sup>H NMR was consistent with product. Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>35</sub>N<sub>7</sub>O<sub>4</sub>·0.25 CHCl<sub>3</sub>: C, 61.05; H, 6.17; N, 17.04. Found: C, 61.41; H, 6.32; N, 16.52. The isomeric mixture (2.00 g) was separated as described in Example 10 to provide 0.73 g of

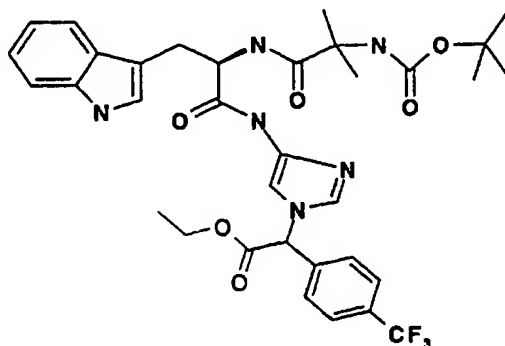
-198-

isomer 1 ( $t_R$  = 9.85 min) and 0.82 g of isomer 2 ( $t_R$  = 12.87 min). To a solution of isomer 2 (0.82 g, 1.50 mmol) stirring in ethyl acetate and methanol was added a saturated solution of hydrochloric acid in ethyl acetate.

- 5 The resulting mixture was concentrated to provide 0.84 g of the desired product: ESMS:  $(M+H)^+$  546.2, 547.3.  $^1H$  NMR was consistent with product. Anal. Calcd. for  $C_{29}H_{35}N_7O_4 \cdot 3.0$  HCl: C, 53.18; H, 5.85; N, 14.97. Found: C, 53.73; H, 6.03; N, 14.04.

10

## Example 2-45

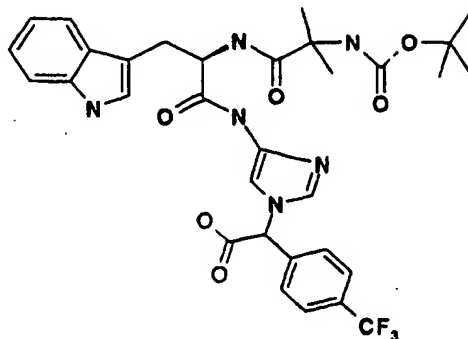
Preparation 34

- 15 Hydrogenation of the product of Preparation 8 (1.75 g, 5.1 mmol) with 10% palladium on carbon (1.4 g) in tetrahydrofuran (60 mL) followed by reaction with the product of Preparation 1L (2.0 g, 5.1 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.76 g, 5.6 mmol) and 1-(3-
- 20 dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (1.16 g, 5.6 mmol) as described in Preparation 5A gave 2.51 g (72%) of the desired product as a tan foam:  $^1H$ -NMR (d, DMSO) 1.15-1.35 (m, 18H), 3.05-3.15 (m, 2H), 4.25 (m, 2H), 4.65 (br s, 1H), 6.62 (s, 1H), 6.85 (m, 1H), 6.95-7.08 (m, 2H),
- 25 7.20-7.30 (m, 2H), 7.40-7.55 (m, 2H), 7.55-7.65 (m, 3H), 7.82 (d,  $J$  = 8.3 Hz, 2H), 10.20 (br s, 1H), 10.75 (br s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 685 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for

-199-

$C_{34}H_{39}F_3N_6O_6 \cdot 1H_2O$ : C, 58.11; H, 5.88; N, 11.96. Found: C, 58.15; H, 5.59; N, 11.92.

### Preparation 35

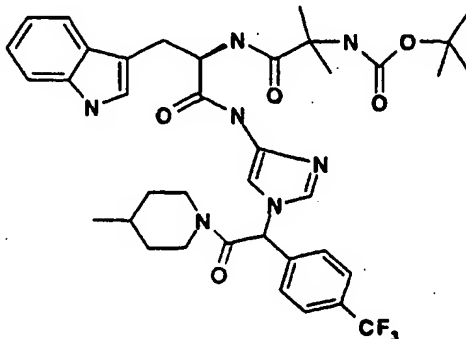


5

Reaction of the product of Preparation 34 (2.2 g, 3.2 mmol) and lithium hydroxide (0.1 g, 3.9 mmol) in dioxane (50 mL) and water (25 mL) as described in Preparation 5 gave 2.1 g (100%) of the desired product as a tan foam:  $^1H$ -NMR (d, DMSO), 1.15-1.35 (m, 15H), 3.05-3.15 (m, 2H), 4.65 (br s, 1H), 6.97 (s, 1H), 6.90 (m, 1H), 6.98-7.10 (m, 2H), 7.20-7.30 (m, 2H), 7.40-7.55 (m, 2H), 7.57-7.64 (m, 3H), 7.80 (d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 2H), 10.20 (br s, 1H), 10.75 (br s, 1H), 13.80 (br s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 657.4 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $C_{32}H_{35}F_3N_6O_6$ : C, 58.53; H, 5.37; N, 12.80. Found: C, 59.28; H, 5.17; N, 12.65.

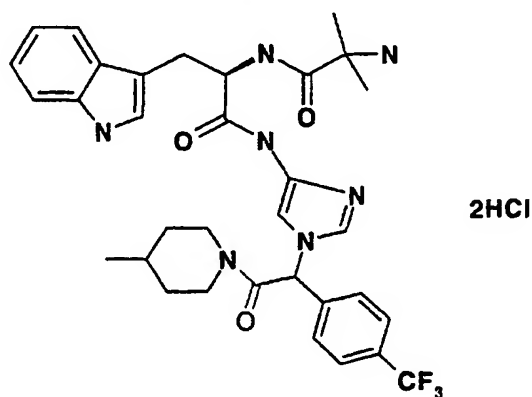
15

### Preparation 36



-200-

Reaction of the product of Preparation 35 (0.7 g, 1.1 mmol), 4-methylpiperidine (0.13 mL, 1.1 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.17 g, 1.2 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (0.26 g, 1.2 mmol) in N,N-dimethylformamide (30 mL) as described in Preparation EX4A provided 0.47 g (58%) of the desired product as a tan foam:  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 0.78 (d,  $J = 6.4$  Hz, 1.5H), 0.86 (d,  $J = 6.3$  Hz, 1.5H), 1.15-1.35 (m, 18H), 1.50-1.70 (m, 3H), 2.60-2.70 (m, 2H), 3.00-3.15 (m, 2H), 3.30 (m, 1H), 4.40 (m, 1H), 4.65 (m, 1H), 6.85-6.95 (m, 2H), 7.00-7.10 (m, 2H), 7.17-7.30 (m, 2H), 7.40-7.60 (m, 4H), 7.75-7.85 (m, 2H), 10.20 (br s, 1H), 10.75 (br s, 1H); MS (ion spray) 738.5 (M+1); Anal. Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{38}\text{H}_{46}\text{F}_3\text{N}_7\text{O}_5 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 60.39; H, 6.40; N, 12.97. Found: C, 60.18; H, 6.21; N, 12.99.

Compounds 60 and 61

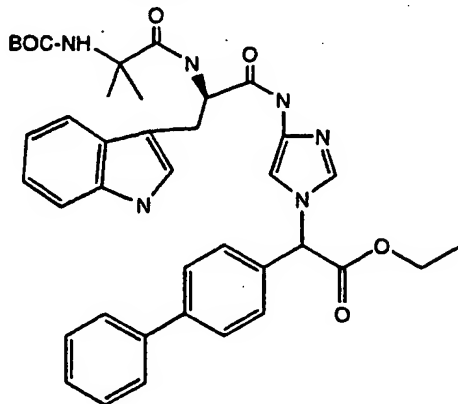
Reaction of the product of Preparation 36 (4.8 g, 6.5 mmol) and trifluoroacetic acid (16 mL) in dichloromethane (40 mL) as described in Example 4 gave 2.0 g (44%) of the desired mixture as a tan foam. Purification by HPLC (8 x 15 cm Prochrom column packed with Kromasil CHI-DMP chiral phase with an eluent mixture of 3A alcohol (13% by v), dimethylethylamine (0.2% by v) in heptane at a flow rate of 250 mL/min) gave 0.5 g (12

-201-

%) of isomer 1 and 0.4 g (9 %) of isomer 2. **Compound 60**  
(**isomer 1**)  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 0.77 (d,  $J = 6.5$  Hz, 1.5H),  
0.87 (d,  $J = 6.0$  Hz, 1.5H), 1.00 (m, 1H), 1.32 (s, 3H),  
1.50 (s, 3H), 1.50-1.70 (m, 2H), 2.72 (m, 1H), 3.00-3.30  
5 (m, 4H), 3.75 (m, 1H), 4.05-4.33 (m, 3H), 4.20 (m, 1H),  
4.78 (m, 1H), 6.94 (m, 3H), 7.20 (s, 1H), 7.30-7.40 (m,  
2H), 7.55-7.70 (m, 2H), 7.75-8.00 (m, 4H), 8.05-8.15 (m,  
2H), 8.50 (m, 1H), 10.86 (s, 1H), 11.05 (s, 1H);  $t_R = 6.01$   
min; MS (ion spray) 638.2 (M+1). **Compound 61 (isomer 2)**  
10  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (d, DMSO) 0.77 (d,  $J = 6.5$  Hz, 1.5H), 0.87 (d,  $J =$   
6.0 Hz, 1.5H), 1.00 (m, 1H), 1.32 (s, 3H), 1.50 (s, 3H),  
1.50-1.70 (m, 2H), 2.72 (m, 1H), 3.00-3.30 (m, 4H), 3.75  
(m, 1H), 4.05-4.33 (m, 3H), 4.20 (m, 1H), 4.78 (m, 1H),  
6.94 (m, 3H), 7.20 (s, 1H), 7.30-7.40 (m, 2H), 7.55-7.70  
15 (m, 2H), 7.75-8.00 (m, 4H), 8.05-8.15 (m, 2H), 8.50 (m,  
1H), 10.86 (s, 1H), 11.05 (s, 1H);  $t_R = 7.5$  min; MS (ion  
spray) 638.2 (M+1).

20

## Example 2-46

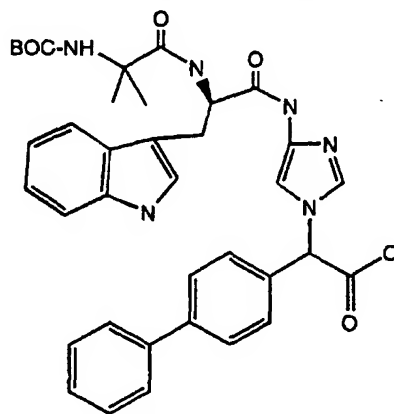
Preparation 345

To a mixture of the product of Preparation 11 (6.0  
g, 17.1 mmol) and 10% palladium on carbon (6.0 g) in  
25 tetrahydrofuran (100 mL). The reaction mixture was placed  
under a hydrogen atmosphere (40 psi) using a Parr

-202-

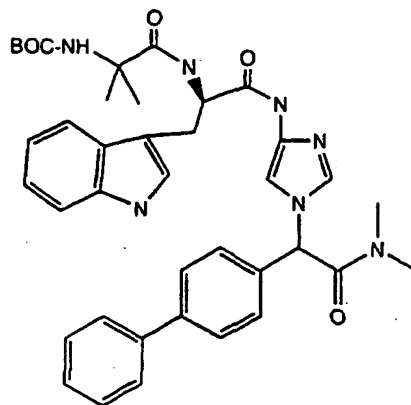
apparatus for 30 min then filtered through Celite. The resulting solution was then added to a previously prepared mixture of the product of Preparation 1L (6.66 g, 17.1 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (2.31 g, 17.1 mmol), and 1,3 dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (3.53 g, 17.1 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (75 mL). After 16 h at room temperature, the reaction mixture was concentrated and the crude material purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 4% methanol/dichloromethane) to yield 6.17 g (52%) of the desired product as a brown foam:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR consistent with structure; MS (ion spray) 693 (M+1).

**Preparation 346**



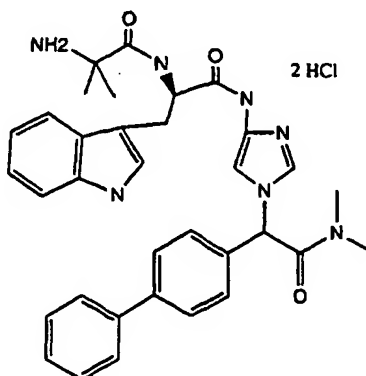
To a solution of the product Preparation 345 (4.6 g, 6.64 mmol) stirring in tetrahydrofuran (100 mL) at room temperature was added a solution of lithium hydroxide in water (40 mL of 1M). After 30 min, the reaction mixture was acidified with 5N HCl (8.5 mL). The resulting mixture diluted with water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined organic extracts were dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated to yield 4.4 g (99%) of the desired product as a yellow foam.



Preparation 347

To a solution of the product Preparation 346 (4.0 g, 6.02 mmol) stirring in tetrahydrofuran (50 mL) at room temperature was added 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (813 mg, 6.02 mmol) and 1,3 dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (1.24 g, 6.02 mmol). After 15 min, dimethylamine (3.0 mL of a 2M soln in tetrahydrofuran, 6.02 mmol) was added. After stirring for 16 h in a sealed flask, the reaction mixture was filtered and concentrated. The resulting crude material was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 5% methanol/dichloromethane) to yield 2.79 g (68%) of the desired product as a yellow foam..

15

Compounds 62 and 63

-204-

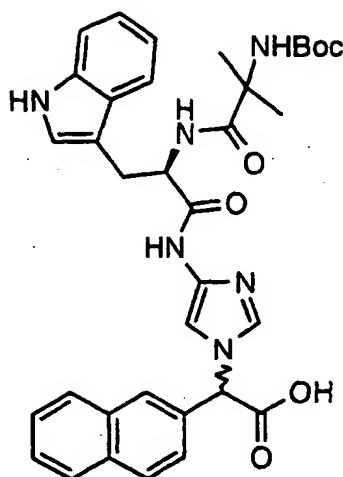
To the product of Preparation 347 (3.4 g, 5.0 mmol) was added a saturated solution of HCl(g)/acetic acid (50 mL). After 1.5 h, the reaction mixture was concentrated then partitioned between ethyl acetate and saturated sodium bicarbonate. The organic layer was removed, dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated to yield 2.45 g (84%) of the free base as a light yellow foam. The diastereomeric material (2.45 g) was chromatographed on an 8 x 15 cm Prochrom column packed with Kromsil CHI chiral phase using an eluent mixture of 3A alcohol and dimethylethylamine in heptane to provide the individual diastereomers in pure form:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR consistent with product; MS (ion spray) 592 (M+1); Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{34}\text{H}_{37}\text{N}_7\text{O}_3$ : C, 69.02; H, 6.30; N, 16.57. (Found) C, 67.93; H, 6.29; N, 15.80.

**Compound 62 (Isomer 1)** To a solution of the purified isomer in ethyl acetate was added a saturated solution of hydrochloric acid in ethyl acetate. The resulting slurry was concentrated to dryness to yield 992 mg (37%) of the desired product as an off-white solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR consistent with product; MS (ion spray) 592 (M+1); Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{34}\text{H}_{37}\text{N}_7\text{O}_3 \times 2 \text{ HCl}$ : C, 61.44; H, 5.91; N, 14.75. (Found) C, 59.54; H, 5.92; N, 13.76.

**Compound 63 (Isomer 2)** To a solution of the purified isomer in ethyl acetate was added a saturated solution of hydrochloric acid in ethyl acetate. The resulting slurry was concentrated to dryness to yield 1.17 g (40%) of the desired product as an off-white solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR consistent with structure; MS (ion spray) 592 (M+1); Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{34}\text{H}_{37}\text{N}_7\text{O}_3 \times 2 \text{ HCl}$ : C, 61.44; H, 5.91; N, 14.75. (Found) C, 59.03; H, 6.04; N, 13.84.

Example 2-47

2-[4-((2R)-2-(2-[(tert-butoxy)carbonylamino]-2-methylpropanoylamino)-3-indol-3-ylpropanoylamino)imidazolyl]-2-(2-naphthyl)acetic Acid

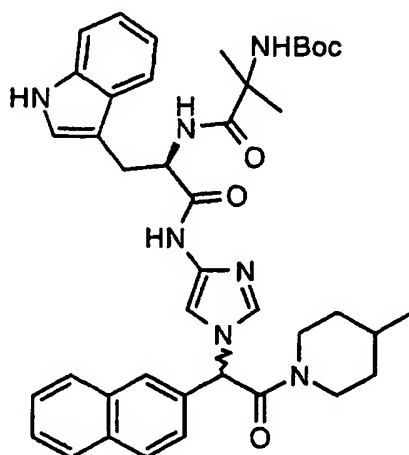


10 A solution consisting of ethyl 2-[4-((2R)-2-(2-[(tert-butoxy)carbonylamino]-2-methylpropanoylamino)-3-indol-3-ylpropanoylamino)imidazolyl]-2-(2-naphthyl)acetate (1.52 grams, 2.28 mmol), lithium hydroxide (0.11 grams, 4.56 mmol), dioxane (10 mL), and water (10 mL) was stirred at  
15 ambient temperature until complete as determined by hplc (30 minutes). The reaction mixture was concentrated to dryness and the residue was dissolved in water (20 mL). The aqueous solution was adjusted to a pH of 3 using a 10% sodium bisulfate solution and extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 25  
20 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried using sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated to give 1.34 grams (92%) of 2-[4-((2R)-2-(2-[(tert-butoxy)carbonylamino]-2-methylpropanoylamino)-3-indol-3-ylpropanoylamino)imidazolyl]-2-(2-naphthyl)acetic acid.

-206-

N-[(1R)-2-Indol-3-yl-1-(N-{1-[2-(4-methylpiperidiny)]-1-(2-naphthyl)-2-oxoethyl]imidazol-4-yl}carbamoyl)ethyl]-2-[(tert-butoxy)carbonylamino]-2-methylpropanamide

5



A solution consisting of 2-[4-((2R)-2-{2-[(tert-butoxy)carbonylamino]-2-methylpropanoylamino}-3-indol-3-ylpropanoylamino)imidazolyl]-2-(2-naphthyl)acetic acid (0.55 grams, 0.861 mmol), 4-methylpiperidine (0.085 grams, 0.861 mmol), 1,3-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (0.195 grams, 0.947 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate (0.116 grams, 0.861 mmol) and dimethyl formamide (5 mL) was stirred at ambient temperature until complete as determined by hplc (7 hours). The reaction mixture was diluted with water (40 mL) and extracted with ethyl acetate (4 x 25 mL). The organic extracts were combined, washed with saturated sodium chloride solution (2 x 35 mL), dried using sodium sulfate, and concentrated to an oil. The crude product was purified using preparative reverse phase hplc to give 0.32 grams (52%) of N-[(1R)-2-indol-3-yl-1-(N-{1-[2-(4-methylpiperidyl)-1-(2-naphthyl)-2-oxoethyl]imidazol-4-yl}carbamoyl)ethyl]-2-[(tert-butoxy)carbonylamino]-2-methylpropanamide. <sup>1</sup>H nmr (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): 0.76-0.77 (d, 2H),

-207-

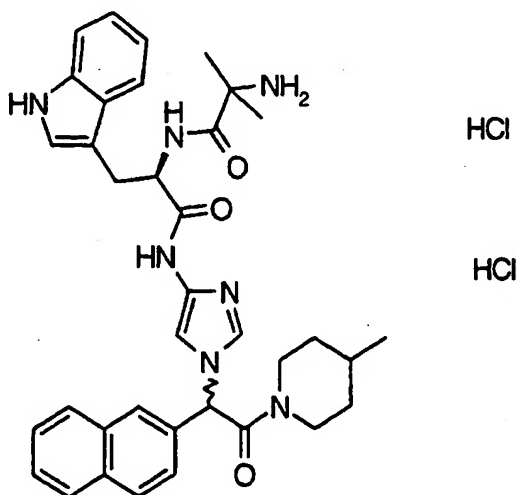
0.91-0.95 (m, 2H), 1.23-1.36 (m, 18H), 1.54 (m, 1H), 1.67 (m, 1H), 2.70-2.72 (m, 2H), 3.25-3.29 (m, 2H), 3.68 (m, 1H), 4.55-4.70 (m, 1H), 4.98 (m, 1H), 6.24 (m, 1H), 6.81-6.83 (d, 1H), 6.92 (m, 1H), 7.00-7.01 (m, 1H), 7.18-7.28 (m, 3H),  
5 7.37-7.55 (m, 5H), 7.76-7.83 (m, 4H), 8.80 (s, broad, 1H), 10.38 (s, broad, 1H).  $^{13}\text{C}$  nmr ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ ):  $\delta$  14.60, 19.32, 19.47, 21.41, 21.83, 21.90, 25.39, 25.55, 26.04, 28.56, 28.63, 28.84, 31.05, 31.16, 31.21, 33.98, 34.08, 34.29, 34.69, 43.42, 46.28, 46.52, 49.38, 54.55, 56.99, 60.77, 62.31, 69.97, 71.02, 108.80, 110.24, 111.79, 119.02, 119.36, 121.86, 124.10, 125.99, 127.12, 127.36, 127.97, 128.08, 128.10, 128.16, 128.33, 128.63, 128.71, 129.77, 132.26, 133.63, 133.75, 134.02, 136.58, 137.29, 155.16, 157.65, 166.07, 166.18, 166.22, 166.34, 169.40, 171.52, 175.12.

15

Compound 64

N-[(1R)-2-Indol-3-yl-1-(N-{1-[2-(4-methylpiperidyl)-1-(2-naphthyl)-2-oxoethyl]imidazol-4-yl}carbamoyl)ethyl]-2-amino-2-methylpropanamide Dihydrochloride

20



-208-

A solution consisting of N-[(1R)-2-indol-3-yl-1-(N-{1-[2-(4-methylpiperidyl)-1-(2-naphthyl)-2-oxoethyl]imidazol-4-yl}carbamoyl)ethyl]-2-[(tert-butoxy)carbonylamino]-2-methylpropanamide (0.32 grams, 0.445 mmol) and anisole (0.25 mL) dissolved in methylene chloride (20 mL) was added trifluoroacetic acid (2.5 mL). The resulting reaction mixture was stirred at ambient temperature until complete as determined by hplc (2.5 hours). The reaction mixture was concentrated to dryness. The residue was dissolved in methanol (5 mL) and applied to a Varian Mega Bond Elut SCX ion exchange column (5 gram). The column was washed with methanol (50 mL). The product was eluted from the column with 2N ammonia in methanol (30 mL). The eluent was concentrated to dryness to give the free base (0.28 grams). A 1.95 M solution of anhydrous HCl in ethyl acetate (0.456 mL, 0.89 mmol) was added to the free base which was dissolved in ethyl acetate (10 mL). The resulting precipitate was collected by filtration and dried in vacuum to give 0.27 grams (87%) of N-[(1R)-2-indol-3-yl-1-(N-{1-[2-(4-methylpiperidyl)-1-(2-naphthyl)-2-oxoethyl]imidazol-4-yl}carbamoyl)ethyl]-2-amino]-2-methylpropanamide dihydrochloride. MS (FIA) m/z 620.7 [(M+H)<sup>+</sup>]. Anal. calcd. for C<sub>36</sub>H<sub>41</sub>N<sub>7</sub>O<sub>3</sub>·2HCl·1/2H<sub>2</sub>O: C: 61.62; H: 6.32; N: 13.97. Found: C: 61.42; H: 6.18; N: 13.62. Anal. calcd. exact mass for C<sub>36</sub>H<sub>42</sub>N<sub>7</sub>O<sub>3</sub> [(M+H)<sup>+</sup>] = 620.3349. Exact mass found by mass spectrometry: C<sub>36</sub>H<sub>42</sub>N<sub>7</sub>O<sub>3</sub> [(M+H)<sup>+</sup>] = 620.3355. <sup>1</sup>H nmr (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>): 0.65-0.67 (d, 2H), 0.89-0.90 (d, 2H), 1.16-1.24 (m, 2H), 1.35-1.36 (d, 4H), 1.51-1.53 (d, 4H), 1.63-1.65 (m, 1H), 2.68-2.74 (m, 1.5H), 3.08 (t, 0.5H), 3.17-3.19 (m, 1H), 3.26-3.27 (m, 1H), 3.71-3.82 (m, 1H), 4.40-4.55 (m, 1H), 4.71-4.72 (t, 1H), 6.90-7.00 (m, 1H), 7.02-7.04 (m, 1H), 7.26-7.33 (m, 3H), 7.52 (m, 1H), 7.59-7.62 (m, 3H), 7.74 (m, 1H), 7.98-8.09 (m, 4H), 8.31-8.32 (d,

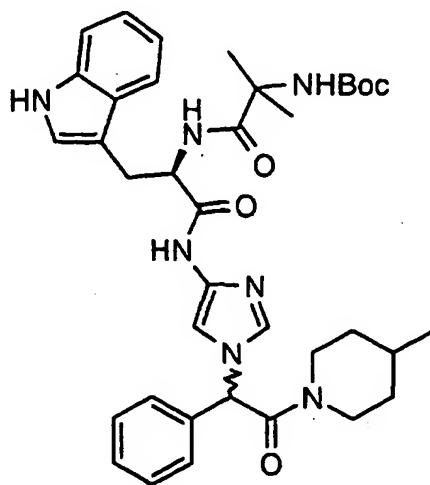
-209-

3H), 8.49-8.61 (m, 1H), 8.66-8.68 (d, 1H), 10.94 (s, 1H), 11.35 (s, 1H).

Example 2-48

5

N-[(1R)-2-Indol-3-yl-1-(N-(1-[2-(4-methylpiperidyl)-2-oxo-1-phenylethyl]imidazol-4-yl)carbamoyl)ethyl]-2-[(tert-butoxy)carbonylamino]-2-methylpropanamide



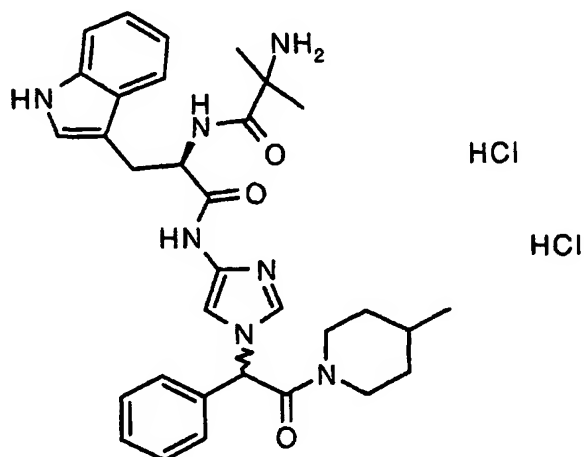
10

This compound was obtained from the hydrolysis of ethyl 2-[4-((2R)-2-{2-[(tert-butoxy) carbonylamino]-2-methyl propanoylamino}-3-indol-3-ylpropanoylamino)imidazolyl]-2-phenylacetate and subsequent reaction with 4-methyl piperidine in 84% yield after Biotage Flash 40M purification using dichloromethane : methanol (24:1) as the eluent. MS (FIA) m/z 670.5 [(M+H)<sup>+</sup>]. <sup>1</sup>H nmr (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 0.74-0.75 (d, 2H), 0.89-0.90 (d, 2H), 1.17-1.32 (m, 18H), 1.53-1.63 (m, 3H), 2.66-2.70 (m, 1H), 3.05 (t, 1H), 3.15-3.20 (m, 1H), 3.69-3.83 (m, 1H), 4.36-4.49 (m, 1H), 4.67 (s, broad, 1H), 6.90-6.93 (m, 2H), 7.01-7.04 (m, 2H), 7.11 (s, 1H), 7.26-7.32 (m, 2H), 7.40-7.54 (m, 5H), 7.67 (s, broad, 1H), 8.16 (m, broad, 1H), 10.49 (s, broad, 1H), 10.84 (s, 1H).

-210-

Compound 65

N-[(1R)-2-Indol-3-yl-1-(N-{1-[2-(4-methylpiperidyl)-2-oxo-1-phenylethyl]imidazol-4-yl}carbamoyl)ethyl]-2-amino-2-methyl  
 5 propanamide Dihydrochloride



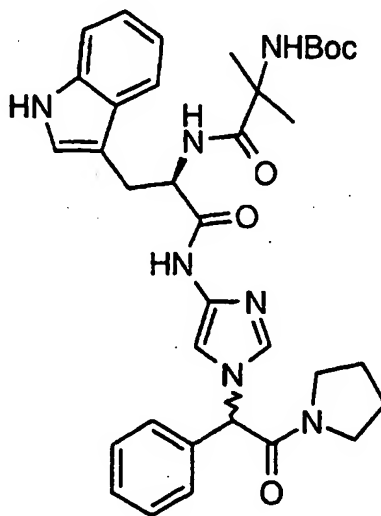
10 This compound was obtained from N-[(1R)-2-indol-3-yl-1-(N-{1-[2-(4-methylpiperidyl)-2-oxo-1-phenylethyl]imidazol-4-yl}carbamoyl)ethyl]-2-[(tert-butoxy)carbonylamino]-2-methyl  
 15 propanamide as a red foam in 100% yield. MS (FIA) m/z 570.5 [(M+H)<sup>+</sup>]. <sup>1</sup>H nmr (d-MeOH): δ 0.81-0.82 (d, 2H), 0.98-0.99 (d, 2H), 1.18-1.21 (m, 2H), 1.34-1.37 (m, 1H), 1.43 (s, 3H), 1.61 (s, 6H), 1.71 (t, 1H), 2.73-2.76 (m, 1.5H), 3.14 (t, 0.5H), 3.27-3.33 (m, 1H), 3.40-3.44 (m, 1H), 3.61-3.65 (m, 1H), 3.75-3.77 (d, 1H), 4.45-4.60 (m, 1H), 4.81 (s, broad, 4H), 6.94-6.99 (m, 1.5H), 7.06-7.07 (m, 1.5H), 7.19 (s, 1H),  
 20 7.31-7.35 (m, 2H), 7.52-7.61 (m, 6H), 8.62-8.65 (d, 1H).



-211-

Example 2-49

N-((1R)-2-Indol-3-yl-1-{N-[1-(2-oxo-1-phenyl-2-pyrrolidinylethyl)imidazol-4-yl]carbamoyl}ethyl)-2-[(tert-butoxy)carbonylamino]-2-methylpropanamide



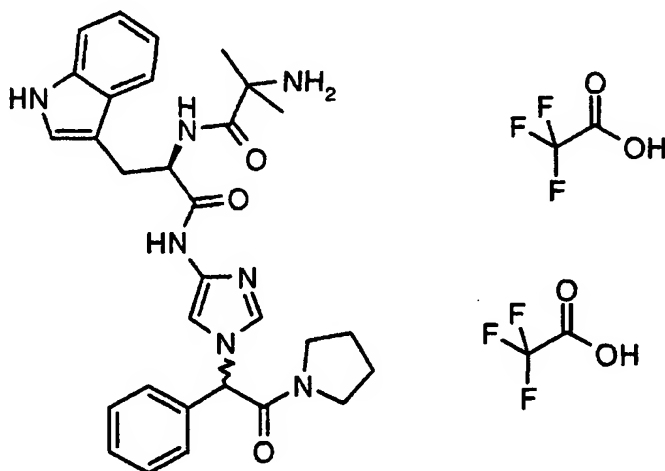
This compound was obtained from the hydrolysis of ethyl  
 2-[4-((2R)-2-{2-[(tert-butoxy) carbonylamino]-2-methyl  
 10 propanoylamino)-3-indol-3-ylpropanoylamino)imidazolyl]-2-  
 phenylacetate and subsequent reaction with pyrrolidine in  
 80% yield after purification by flash chromatography using  
 dichloromethane : methanol (19:1) as the eluent. <sup>1</sup>H nmr  
 15 (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 1.10-1.40 (m, 15H), 1.67-1.92 (m, 3H), 2.92-  
 3.60 (m, 5H), 4.90 (s, broad, 1H), 5.33 (s, broad, 1H), 5.85  
 (d, 1H), 6.80-7.05 (m, 3H), 7.13-7.39 (m, 10H), 7.44-7.80  
 (m, 2H), 8.96 (s, broad, 1H), 10.20 (s, broad, 1H). <sup>13</sup>C nmr  
 (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 14.25, 21.11, 24.02, 25.63, 26.08, 28.24,  
 20 33.87, 46.39, 46.64, 54.28, 56.67, 60.46, 63.07, 63.09,  
 108.33, 109.73, 110.69, 111.47, 118.36, 118.56, 119.05,  
 121.57, 123.77, 125.01, 126.42, 127.60, 128.51, 129.38,

-212-

133.14, 133.85, 136.23, 136.45, 136.49, 165.79, 165.85,  
169.17, 174.87.

Compound 66

- 5 N-((1R)-2-Indol-3-yl-1-(N-[1-(2-oxo-1-phenyl-2-pyrrolidinyl  
ethyl)imidazol-4-yl]carbamoyl)ethyl)-2-amino-2-methyl  
propanamide Bistrifluoroacetic Acid



10

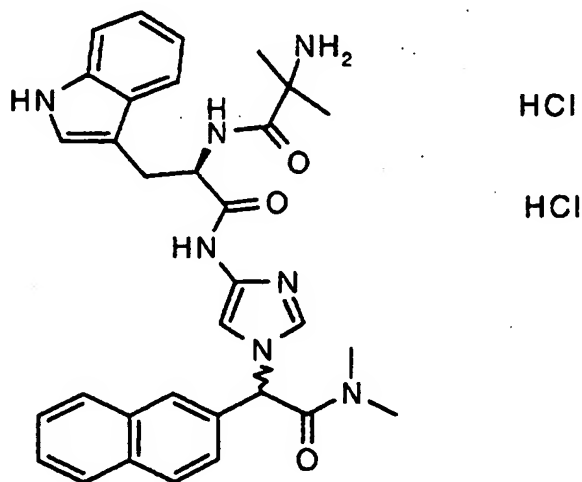
This compound was obtained from N-((1R)-2-indol-3-yl-1-(N-[1-(2-oxo-1-phenyl-2-pyrrolidinylethyl)imidazol-4-yl]carbamoyl)ethyl)-2-[(tert-butoxy)carbonylamino]-2-methylpropanamide as a white solid in 50% yield. MS (FD+)

- 15 m/z 541 (M<sup>+</sup>). Anal. calcd. for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>35</sub>N<sub>7</sub>O<sub>3</sub>·2C<sub>2</sub>HF<sub>3</sub>O<sub>2</sub>: C: 53.06;  
H: 4.85; N: 12.74. Found: C: 52.93; H: 4.88; N:  
12.55. <sup>1</sup>H nmr (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>): δ 1.29 (s, 3H), 1.46-1.48 (d,  
3H), 1.72-1.88 (m, 4H), 2.94 (m, 1H), 3.06-3.07 (m, 1H),  
3.19-3.20 (m, 1H), 3.40-3.41 (d, 2H), 3.67-3.69 (m, 1H),  
20 4.78 (s, broad, 1H), 6.53 (s, 1H), 6.93-6.97 (m, 1H), 7.06  
(m, 1H), 7.20 (d, 1H), 7.31-7.36 (m, 2H), 7.42-7.42 (m, 4H),  
7.73-7.80 (m, 2H), 8.01 (s, broad, 2H), 8.36-8.38 (d, 1H),  
10.82-10.85 (d, 2H).

-213-

Example 2-50Compound 67

N-[(1R)-1-(N-(1-[(N,N-Dimethylcarbamoyl)-2-naphthylmethyl]  
 5 imidazol-4-yl)carbamoyl)-2-indol-3-ylethyl]-2-amino-2-methyl  
 propanamide Dihydrochloride

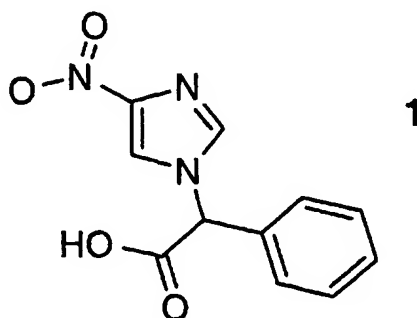


10 This compound was obtained from the reaction of 2-[4-  
 ((2R)-2-(2-[(tert-butoxy)carbonylamino]-2-  
 methylpropanoylamino)-3-indol-3-ylpropanoylamino)  
 imidazolyl]-2-(2-naphthyl)acetic acid and dimethylamine  
 followed by deprotection according to the general procedure  
 15 as an off white solid in 90% yield. MS (FIA) m/z 566.6  
 [(M+H)<sup>+</sup>]. <sup>1</sup>H nmr (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>): δ 1.36-1.37 (d, 3H), 1.51-1.53  
 (d, 3H), 2.92 (s, 3H), 2.99 (s, 3H), 3.19-3.22 (m, 1H),  
 3.27-3.31 (m, 1H), 4.68-4.73 (m, 1H), 6.90-6.94 (m, 1H),  
 6.97-7.03 (m, 1H), 7.29-7.33 (m, 2H), 7.38 (s, 1H), 7.55 (s,  
 20 1H), 7.60-7.62 (t, 3H), 7.73 (t, 1H), 7.98-8.06 (m, 4H),  
 8.36-8.37 (d, 3H), 8.72-8.74 (d, 2H), 10.97 (s, 1H), 11.49  
 (s, 1H).

Example 2-51

## 2-(4-Nitroimidazolyl)-2-phenylacetic acid

5



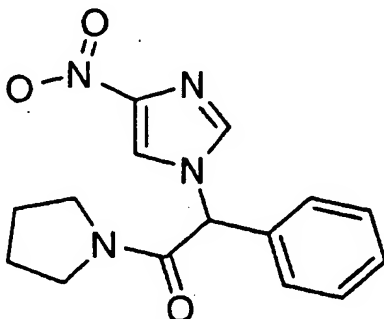
Lithium hydroxide (18.1 g, 750 mm, 2 eq) was added to a stirred slurry of ethyl 2-(4-nitroimidazolyl)-2-phenylacetate (104 g, 379 mm) in 250 mL of ethanol. Deionized water was added to the resulting mixture and the stirring was continued for 4 hours. The ethanol was removed under vacuum and the resulting aqueous solution was washed with 100 mL of diethyl ether. The aqueous layer was diluted with 100 mL of deionized water and the pH was adjusted to 1.8 with concentrated HCl after cooling to 12 °C. The resulting slurry was stirred for 30 minutes at less than 5 degrees and filtered. The wet cake was washed with 100 mL of deionized water and dried under a stream of air on the filter overnight to yield 90.34 g (96%) of a brown solid. The product may be recrystallized from isopropyl alcohol to give 72.31 g (80% recovery, 77% overall yield) of a tan solid. Elemental analysis: Calculated: %C 53.45, %H 3.67, %N 16.97; Found: : %C 53.67, %H 3.79, %N 16.65. MS: 247 (M<sup>+</sup>): IR (cm<sup>-1</sup>)

-215-

<sup>1</sup>)1719; H<sup>1</sup> nmr (d<sup>6</sup> DMSO): δ 6.51 (s, 1H), 7.43-7.55 (m, 5H), 7.95 (s, 1H), 8.40 (s, 1H)

2-(4-Nitroimidazolyl)-2-phenyl-1-pyrrolidinylethane-  
1-one

5



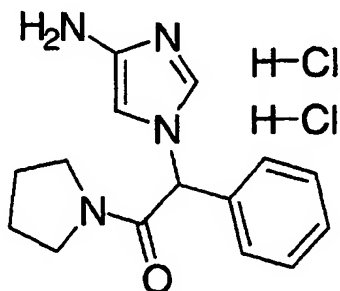
3

N-Methyl morpholine (22.25 ml, 2 eq) was added  
10 to a stirred solution of 2-(4-nitroimidazolyl)-2-phenylacetic acid (1) (25.03 g, 101.2 mm) and 2-chloro-4,6-dimethoxy-1,3,5-triazine (18.1 g, 101.2 mm, 1.0 eq) in 50 ml of anhydrous tetrahydrofuran at 25° C. After stirring the reaction mixture at  
15 ambient temperature for 1 h, 7.2 mL (101.2 mm, 1.0 eq) of pyrrolidine was added dropwise. The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was quenched by the addition of 200 mL of ethyl acetate and 200 mL of 1M HCl. The  
20 layers were separated and the organic layer was washed with 100 mL of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution. The mixture resulting from the bicarbonate wash was diluted 1:1 with deionized water to dissolve the resulting solids and the  
25 layers were separated. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and the volatiles were removed under vacuum to give a brown foam. This foam was dissolved in methanol,

-216-

diethyl ether and methylene chloride. Evaporation of the solvents overnight yielded a brown solid which was slurried in 200 mL of diethyl ether for 4 hours. The resulting slurry was filtered and the cake was washed with diethyl ether. The solids were dried under vacuum overnight to give a cream colored product (21.68 g, 71%)  $\delta$  ( $d^6$  DMSO): 1.69-1.84 (m, 3H), 2.80-2.85 (m, 0.7H), 3.32 - 3.41 (m, 3.6H), 3.64-3.67 (m, 0.7H), 6.65 (s, 1H), 7.42-7.50 (m, 5H), 7.83 (s, 1H), 8.22 (s, 1H)

**2-(4-aminoimidazolyl)-2-phenyl-1-pyrrolidinylethan-1-one, dihydrochloride**

**6**

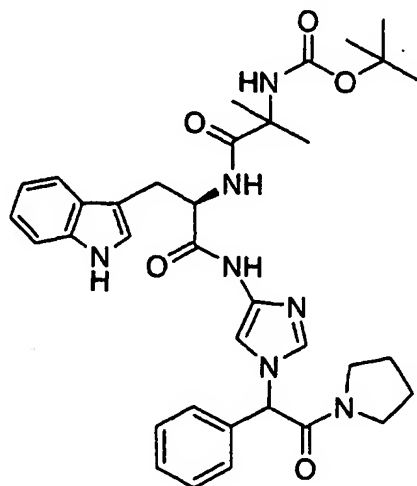
Ethanol (200 mL) was added to a mixture of 2-(4-nitroimidazolyl)-2-phenyl-1-pyrrolidinylethan-1-one (3) (0.752 g, 2.8 mm) and 10% Pd on carbon (75 mg) in a Bradley hydrogenation apparatus. The stirred reaction mixture was subjected to a 60 psi H<sub>2</sub> atmosphere and warmed to 60 °C. After 2 hours, the reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and the catalyst was removed by filtration. Anhydrous HCl gas was added to the filtered solution until saturation. The volatiles were then removed under vacuum to give a light yellow foam. Diethyl ether and methylene chloride (25:1) were added to

-217-

the foam and the resulting mixture was stirred overnight to achieve crystallization. The resulting slurry was filtered and the cake was washed with diethyl ether. The cake was dried under vacuum to give 0.659 g (93%) of a yellow solid. LGD 208.

***N*-((1*R*)-2-indol-3-yl-1-{*N*-[1-(2-oxo-1-phenyl-2-pyrrolidinylethyl)imidazol-4-yl]carbonyl}ethyl)-2-[(*tert*-butoxy)carbonylamino]-2-methylpropanamide**

10



8

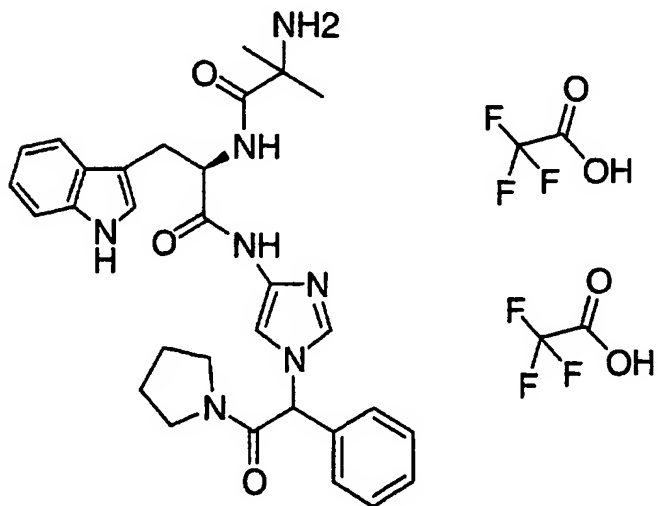
*N*-Methyl morpholine (0.28 mL, 8.32 mm, 1 eq) was added to a stirred slurry of 2-chloro-4,6-dimethoxy-1,3,5-triazine (0.46 g, 2.57 mm, 1 eq) and (2*R*)-2-{2-[(*tert*-butoxy)carbonylamino]-2-methylpropanoylamino}-3-indol-3-ylpropanoic acid (1g, 2.57mm) in 10 mL of anhydrous tetrahydrofuran cooled to less than 0 °C. After 1.5 hours, 2-(4-aminoimidazolyl)-2-phenyl-1-pyrrolidinylethan-1-one, hydrochloride (0.97g, 2.82 mm, 1.1 eq) was added and stirring was continued at ice bath temperatures. The reaction was stirred for 4 hours and quenched by

-218-

the addition of 15 mL of deionized water and ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate layer was washed with a saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, dried over magnesium sulfate and the volatiles were removed under vacuum to give the crude product as a light purple foam (1.4 g, 84%). The crude product was purified by preparative chromatography to provide 0.52 g (31.5%) of the product as a foam. <sup>1</sup>H nmr (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 1.10-1.40 (m, 15H), 1.67-1.92 (m, 3H), 2.92-3.60 (m, 8H), 4.90 (s, broad, 1H), 5.33 (s, broad, 1H), 5.85 (d, 1H), 6.80-7.05 (m, 3H), 7.13-7.39 (m, 10H), 7.44-7.80 (m, 2H), 8.96 (s, broad, 1H), 10.20 (s, broad, 1H).

**Example 2-52****Compound 68**

**N-((1R)-2-indol-3-yl-1-{N-[1-(2-oxo-1-phenyl-2-pyrrolidinylolethyl)imidazol-4-yl]carbamoyl}ethyl)-2-amino-2-methylpropanamide, 2,2,2-trifluoroacetic acid, 2,2,2-trifluoroacetic acid salt**



9



-219-

Trifluoroacetic acid (0.57 mL, 7.4 mm, 33 eq) was added to a stirred solution of *N*-((1*R*)-2-indol-3-yl-1-[*N*-[1-(2-oxo-1-phenyl-2-pyrrolidinylethyl)-imidazol-4-yl]carbamoyl)ethyl)-2-[(tert-butoxy)-carbonylamino]-2-methylpropanamide (**8**) (0.152 g, 0.22 mm) in 5 mL of methylene chloride. After stirring at room temperature for 3 hours, the reaction mixture was diluted with 50 mL of diethyl ether. The resulting solids were isolated by centrifugation and washed with diethyl ether. The solids were dried under vacuum to give the product as a cream colored solid (0.084 g, 48%) MS (FD+) *m/z* 541 (*M*<sup>+</sup>) Anal. calcd. for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>35</sub>N<sub>7</sub>O<sub>3</sub>·2C<sub>2</sub>HF<sub>3</sub>O<sub>2</sub>: C: 53.06; H: 4.85; N: 12.74. Found: C: 52.93; H: 4.88; N: 12.55. <sup>1</sup>H nmr (DMSO-*d*<sub>6</sub>): δ 1.29 (s, 3H), 1.46-1.48 (d, 3H), 1.72-1.88 (m, 4H), 2.94 (m, 1H), 3.06-3.07 (m, 1H), 3.19-3.20 (m, 1H), 3.40-3.41 (d, 2H), 3.67-3.69 (m, 1H), 4.78 (s, broad, 1H), 6.53 (s, 1H), 6.93-6.97 (m, 1H), 7.06 (m, 1H), 7.20 (d, 1H), 7.31-7.36 (m, 2H), 7.42-7.42 (m, 4H), 7.73-7.80 (m, 2H), 8.01 (s, broad, 2H), 8.36-8.38 (d, 1H), 10.82-10.85 (d, 2H).

### Example 2-53

25

### Additional Compounds

Additional compounds of Formula I were also synthesized by methods similar to the foregoing. These compounds included those wherein:

- a) R1 is C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-, R3 is phenyl, R4 is H, and Y is pyrrolidin-1-yl,
- b) R1 is C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OCH<sub>2</sub>-, R3 is phenyl para-substituted by W, W is phenyl, R4 is H, and Y is pyrrolidin-1-yl,
- c) R1 is indol-3-ylmethyl, R3 is phenyl para-substituted by W, W is phenyl, R4 is H, and Y is pyrrolidin-1-yl,

-220-

- d) R1 is indol-3-ylmethyl, R3 is phenyl para-substituted by W, W is -OCH<sub>3</sub>, R4 is H, and Y is pyrrolidin-1-yl,
- e) R1 is C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-, R3 is phenyl para-substituted by W, W is CF<sub>3</sub>, R4 is H, and Y is 4-methylpiperidin-1-yl,
- 5 f) R1 is C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-, R3 is phenyl para substituted by W, W is phenyl, R4 is H, and Y is pyrrolidin-1-yl,
- g) R1 is C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-, R3 is phenyl para substituted by W, W is F, R4 is methyl, and Y is pyrrolidin-1-yl,
- h) R1 is C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OCH<sub>2</sub>-, R3 is phenyl para substituted by W, W is F, R4 is methyl, and Y is pyrrolidin-1-yl,
- 10 i) R1 is C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-, R3 is phenyl para substituted by W, W is F, R4 is methyl, and Y is 4-methylpiperidin-1-yl,
- j) R1 is C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-, R3 is 2-naphthyl, R4 is methyl, and Y is 4-methylpiperidin-1-yl,
- 15 k) R1 is C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OCH<sub>2</sub>-, R3 is 2-naphthyl, R4 is methyl, and Y is 4-methylpiperidin-1-yl,
- l) R1 is C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-, R3 is phenyl para-substituted by W, W is CF<sub>3</sub>, R4 is methyl, and Y is 4-methylpiperidin-1-yl, and
- 20 m) R1 is C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OCH<sub>2</sub>-, R3 is phenyl, R4 is H, and Y is 4-methylpiperidin-1-yl

### Example 3

#### Pituitary Cell Culture Assay for Growth Hormone Secretion

- 25 Thirty-two 250 g male Sprague-Dawley rats were used for each assay. The animals were killed by decapitation and anterior pituitaries were removed and placed into ice cold culture medium. The pituitaries were sectioned into eighths and enzymatically digested using trypsin (Sigma Chemical) to
- 30 weaken connective tissue. Pituitary cells were dispersed by mechanical agitation, collected, pooled and then seeded into 24-well plates (300,000 cells/well). After 4 days of culture, the cells formed an even monolayer. Cells were then washed with medium and challenged to secrete GH by the
- 35 addition of GH secretagogues to the medium. After 15 min at

-221-

37 °C, the medium was removed and stored frozen until radioimmunoassays for rat GH were performed. Doses of secretagogue were added in quadruplicate. Representative data is provided in Table 1 below. Compounds disclosed

5 herein are active in the assay as described. Both EC<sub>50</sub> and efficacy values were calculated by the 4-parameter logistic equation. Such values were pooled and represented as mean +/- standard error, when appropriate.

10

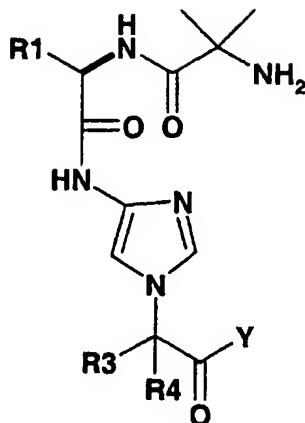
Table 1

EXAMPLES	GH
PART 1	secretion
Example #	EC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
6	5.53
8	2.39

-222-

We claim:

1. A compound of Formula I



5

wherein:

R<sup>1</sup> is C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OCH<sub>2</sub>-, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>- or indol-3-ylmethyl;

Y is pyrrolidinyl, 4-methyl piperidinyl or NR<sub>2</sub>R<sub>2</sub>;

R<sub>2</sub> are each independently a C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>6</sub> alkyl;

10 R<sub>3</sub> is 2-naphthyl or phenyl para-substituted by W;

W is H, F, CF<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy or phenyl; and

R<sub>4</sub> is H or CH<sub>3</sub>,

or a pharmaceutically salt or solvate thereof.

15 2. A compound of Claim 1 wherein R<sup>4</sup> is CH<sub>3</sub>.

3. A compound of Claim 1 wherein said compound has the (R,R) stereo configuration.

20 4. A method for increasing the level of endogenous growth hormone in a human or an animal which comprises administering to said human or animal an effective amount of a compound of Claim 1.

25 5. A method for the treatment or prevention of a physiological condition which may be modulated by an increase in endogenous growth hormone which comprises

-223-

administering to an animal in need of said treatment an effective amount of a compound of Claim 1 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

- 5 6. A pharmaceutical formulation which comprises, as an active ingredient a compound of Claim 1, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof, associated with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, diluents, or excipients.
- 10 7. A pharmaceutical formulation according to Claim 6 which further comprises a bone-antiresorptive agent.
- 15 8. A method according to Claim 7 which further comprises administering to a patient a bone antiresorptive agent.
9. A method according to Claim 8 wherein said bone antiresorptive agent is a bisphosphonate.

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PCT/US 00/04274

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 7 C07K5/062 A61K38/05 A61P19/00

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 7 C07K A61K A61P

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

EPO-Internal, WPI Data, PAJ, CHEM ABS Data

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
P,X	WO 99 08697 A (LILLY CO ELI ;KAUFFMAN RAYMOND FRANCIS (US); PALKOWITZ ALAN DAVID) 25 February 1999 (1999-02-25) claims	1-9
P,X	WO 99 08699 A (BRYANT HENRY UHLMAN ;COPP JAMES DENSMORE (US); FAHEY KENNAN JOSEPH) 25 February 1999 (1999-02-25) claims	1-9
A	EP 0 662 481 A (MERCK & CO INC) 12 July 1995 (1995-07-12)	
A	EP 0 615 977 A (MERCK & CO INC) 21 September 1994 (1994-09-21)	
	—/—	

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

## \* Special categories of cited documents:

- "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- "T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
- "&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

21 July 2000

Date of mailing of the international search report

27/07/2000

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,  
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Cervigni, S

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Int. Patent Application No.

PCT/US 00/04274

## C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	WO 98 16527 A (TANIGUCHI KIYOSHI ; KURODA SATORU (JP); SHIMIZU YASUYO (JP); FUJISA) 23 April 1998 (1998-04-23)	
A	US 5 721 250 A (MORRIELLO GREGORI J ET AL) 24 February 1998 (1998-02-24)	

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

Int. Application No

PCT/US 00/04274

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9908697 A	25-02-1999	AU 9471598 A BR 9803168 A EP 0898963 A	08-03-1999 11-01-2000 03-03-1999
WO 9908699 A	25-02-1999	AU 9025698 A EP 0933365 A NO 20000823 A	08-03-1999 04-08-1999 12-04-2000
EP 0662481 A	12-07-1995	US 5578593 A AT 178070 T AU 673017 B AU 5232193 A CA 2110672 A CN 1092767 A,B DE 69324148 D DE 69324148 T ES 2129072 T HR 931484 A IL 107836 A JP 2509147 B JP 7097367 A MX 9307851 A SI 9300647 A AU 673552 B AU 5232093 A BG 61979 B BG 99710 A BR 1100850 A CA 2110670 A CN 1092071 A,B CZ 9501514 A CZ 9501515 A EP 0615977 A FI 952862 A FI 952863 A HU 9500324 A HU 73228 A HU 72076 A JP 2509530 B JP 6263737 A KR 203962 B MX 9307850 A NO 952294 A NO 952295 A NZ 258412 A NZ 258429 A PL 309331 A PL 309332 A SI 9300646 A SK 75995 A WO 9413696 A WO 9419367 A US 5536716 A US 5652235 A ZA 9309272 A ZA 9309274 A	26-11-1996 15-04-1999 24-10-1996 23-06-1994 12-06-1994 28-09-1994 29-04-1999 28-10-1999 01-06-1999 30-04-1996 04-01-1998 19-06-1996 11-04-1995 30-06-1994 30-09-1994 14-11-1996 23-06-1994 30-11-1998 31-01-1996 07-12-1999 12-06-1994 14-09-1994 13-12-1995 13-12-1995 21-09-1994 09-06-1995 09-06-1995 28-09-1995 29-07-1996 28-03-1996 19-06-1996 20-09-1994 15-06-1999 30-06-1994 10-08-1995 10-08-1995 29-01-1997 26-05-1997 02-10-1995 02-10-1995 30-09-1994 08-11-1995 23-06-1994 01-09-1994 16-07-1996 29-07-1997 08-08-1994 08-08-1994
EP 0615977 A	21-09-1994	US 5536716 A	16-07-1996

Form PCT/ISA/210 (patent family annex) (July 1992)



# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

Int'l Application No

PCT/US 00/04274

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
EP 0615977 A		AU 673552 B	14-11-1996
		AU 5232093 A	23-06-1994
		BG 61979 B	30-11-1998
		BG 99710 A	31-01-1996
		CA 2110670 A	12-06-1994
		CN 1092071 A,B	14-09-1994
		CZ 9501514 A	13-12-1995
		FI 952863 A	09-06-1995
		HU 9500324 A	28-09-1995
		HU 72076 A	28-03-1996
		JP 2509530 B	19-06-1996
		JP 6263737 A	20-09-1994
		KR 203962 B	15-06-1999
		MX 9307850 A	30-06-1994
		NO 952295 A	10-08-1995
		NZ 258412 A	29-01-1997
		PL 309331 A	02-10-1995
		SI 9300646 A	30-09-1994
		SK 75995 A	08-11-1995
		WO 9413696 A	23-06-1994
		US 5652235 A	29-07-1997
		AT 178070 T	15-04-1999
		AU 673017 B	24-10-1996
		AU 5232193 A	23-06-1994
		BR 1100850 A	07-12-1999
		CA 2110672 A	12-06-1994
		CN 1092767 A,B	28-09-1994
		CZ 9501515 A	13-12-1995
		DE 69324148 D	29-04-1999
		DE 69324148 T	28-10-1999
		EP 0662481 A	12-07-1995
		ES 2129072 T	01-06-1999
		FI 952862 A	09-06-1995
		HR 931484 A	30-04-1996
		HU 73228 A	29-07-1996
		IL 107836 A	04-01-1998
		JP 2509147 B	19-06-1996
		JP 7097367 A	11-04-1995
		MX 9307851 A	30-06-1994
		NO 952294 A	10-08-1995
		NZ 258429 A	26-05-1997
		PL 309332 A	02-10-1995
		SI 9300647 A	30-09-1994
		WO 9419367 A	01-09-1994
		US 5578593 A	26-11-1996
		ZA 9309272 A	08-08-1994
		ZA 9309274 A	08-08-1994
WO 9816527 A	23-04-1998	AU 6708298 A	11-05-1998
		WO 9851687 A	19-11-1998
US 5721250 A	24-02-1998	US 5492916 A	20-02-1996
		AU 1172995 A	29-05-1995
		BG 100555 A	31-10-1996
		BR 9408019 A	26-08-1997
		CA 2175218 A	18-05-1995
		CN 1174504 A	25-02-1998
		CZ 9601342 A	11-12-1996

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 00/04274

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
US 5721250 A		EP 0739204 A	30-10-1996
		FI 961951 A	08-05-1996
		HU 74733 A	28-02-1997
		JP 10506091 T	16-06-1998
		LV 11525 A	20-10-1996
		LV 11525 B	20-02-1997
		NO 961865 A	08-07-1996
		PL 322706 A	16-02-1998
		SK 56296 A	05-02-1997
		WO 9513069 A	18-05-1995
		US 5622973 A	22-04-1997